

Word Studies in the Epistle to the Hebrews

Volume Two Hebrews Chapter Two

Robert H. Kreger, B.A. B.R.E.

An expositional verse by verse study from the personal notes of Robert H. Kreger, pastor of the Metropolitan Bible Church, Berkley, Michigan.

Copyright 2014 by Robert H. Kreger. All rights reserved. Anyone may reproduce this material and distribute it, but it may not be sold under any circumstances whatsoever without the author's written permission.

Preparation for Bible Study

Before you begin your Bible study, if you are a believer in the Lord Jesus Christ, be sure that you have named your sins privately to God the Father.

If we confess (acknowledge, name) **our** (known) **sins, He is faithful and just and will forgive us our** (known) **sins and purify us from all** (unknown, or forgotten sins) **unrighteousness.** (I John 1:9, NIV)

You will then be in fellowship with God, filled with the Holy Spirit, and ready to learn spiritual truths from the Word of God.

God is spirit, and his worshipers must worship in spirit (in the filling of the Holy Spirit) **and in truth** (Bible doctrine, spiritual truths from the Word of God). (John 4:24, NIV)

If you have never personally accepted the Lord Jesus Christ through faith, the issue is not naming your sins. The issue is faith alone in Christ alone.

Whoever believes in the Son has eternal life; but whoever rejects (refusing to place faith in Jesus Christ personally) **the Son will not see life, for God's wrath remains on him.** (John 3:36, NIV)

Preface

Volume two of the expositional study of the Epistle to the Hebrews continues with the writer's explanation of the angelic conflict. As with the first volume it is to be studied if the reader desires to learn in-depth Biblical truths. This is a continuation of an exhaustive exposition of the Greek text. It is designed to give the student of the Bible who does not know Greek some of the riches of the original text that cannot be discovered by simply reading an English translation.

This is the second in a series of volumes based on the author's 18 year study of the Epistle to the Hebrews. The King James Version is used as a starting point of all exegetical breakdowns for each verse. But other translations are also used. Each verse is exegeted and retranslated to make it more understandable to the reader.

The contents of this book has been transcribed and edited from the audio recordings of the Epistle to the Hebrews by Robert H. Kreger. These audio recordings are available upon request. Since the information in this book is taken from the author's audio lessons, the reader should be aware that there is some repetition of many important principles and concepts.

The author did not depend upon his own personal knowledge, but relied on many other Greek teachers and authorities to arrive at the corrected translation of each verse. A complete list of all the resources the author used is found in the acknowledgment section at the back of this book.

The Epistle to the Hebrews is a unique book in that the entire content is concerned with the situation in Jerusalem in the first century A.D. The circumstances described in this epistle do not exist today. The writer is using terms that describe the Jewish Temple and its sacrifices and offerings.

The background focuses on Jews who have accepted Jesus Christ as their Messiah and have accepted the New Covenant to the Church, but then returned to the temple and continued to offer sacrifices under the Old Covenant.

It is the author's desire that this book would be a source of encouragement and spiritual enlightenment to all who read it. But most of all, that it would bring glory and honor to the Lord Jesus Christ and eternal praise to Him and His marvelous accomplishments on behalf of all of us.

Robert H. Kreger
Pastor,
Metropolitan Bible Church

Dedicated to

Dr. David D. Allen, former pastor of the Calvary Baptist Church in Hazel Park, Michigan. Dr. Allen's expositional teaching of the scriptures has influenced the lives of many students at the former Detroit Bible College, where he was Vice President for many years. He also served on the board of the Grand Rapids Bible College. I had the privilege of sitting under the expositional teaching of Dr. Allen for over five years. I also took a fifteen day tour to the Holy Land with him in 1973. Dr. Allen's expositional teaching of the Epistle to the Hebrews has been an inspiring guide in my studies of this great book.

Pastor Allen went to be with the Lord on November 7, 2003

Special Recognition

This book would not have been possible without the dedicated efforts of Marjorie Newell, a retired teacher and personal friend. Her very helpful suggestions and input were invaluable to me in my desire to see this book become available to the royal family of God.

Basic Greek Grammar Terms

1. TENSE. — Time and kind of action.
 - A. Present — generally continuous action at the present time.
 - B. Aorist — past tense, an action occurring in a point of time.
 - C. Aorist participle — usually denotes an action which precedes the action of the main verb in the sentence.
 - D. Imperfect — past tense referring to a continuous action in past time.
 - E. Future — action planned for a future time.
 - F. Perfect — completed action with finished results in present time.
 - G. Pluperfect — completed action with finished results in past time.

2. VOICE. — Relation of the verb to the subject.
 - A. Active — the subject produces the action.
 - B. Middle — the subject participates in the results of the action, or additional stress is laid upon the subject as producing the action, i.e., “He himself secured eternal redemption.” (Heb 9:12). This is also known as the “reflexive middle.”
 - C. Passive — the subject receives the action of the verb. This is the voice of GRACE.

3. MOOD. — Relation of the verb to reality.
 - A. Indicative — the mood of reality or certainty.
 - B. Subjunctive — the mood of potential or probability.
 - C. Optative — the mood of desire or possibility.
 - D. Imperative — the mood of command or volition.

4. OTHER VERBAL FORMS.
 - A. Infinitive — it is often used to express purpose or result.
 - B. Participle — it describes its subject as a doer of the action denoted by the verb.

5. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES (Begin with “if”)
 - A. First class conditional clause — If and it is true (Matt 4:6) – Reality.
 - B. Second class conditional clause — If and it is not true (Matt 4:9; John 4:10) – Unreality.
 - C. Third class conditional clause — Maybe it is true and maybe it is not true (I John 1:9) – Probability.
 - D. Fourth class conditional clause — I wish it were true but it is not true (Acts 17:27; I Peter 3:14 & 17;) – expresses the will or desire of the author.

Word Studies in New Testament
The Epistle to the Hebrews
Volume Two - Hebrews Chapter Two

Contents

Title.....	1
Preparation for Bible Study.....	2
Preface.....	3
Dedication.....	4
Definition of Some Greek Terms.....	5
Contents.....	6
Introduction.....	9
Hebrews chapter two verse 1	9
Outline of Chapter Two.....	9
Doctrine of the Angelic Conflict.....	11
Colossians 1:16-17;.....	11
Genesis 1:1;.....	12
Ezekiel 28:11-19;.....	14
Isaiah 14:12-15;.....	19
Genesis 3:1-7;.....	21
Genesis 6:1-8;.....	22
Genesis 12:1-3;.....	23
Summary of verse one.....	61
Hebrews chapter two verse 2.....	64
Three Parts of the Mosaic Law.....	65
Summary of verse two.....	72
Acronym of grace.....	75
Hebrews chapter two verse 3.....	79
Explanation of conditional clauses.....	79
Twelve things received at salvation.....	82
Summary of the phrase “Those having heard”.....	87

Hebrews chapter two verse 4.....	89
Three specific signs given to the Jews.....	91
Doctrine of Spiritual Gifts.....	97
Hebrews chapter two verse 5.....	103
Doctrine of Civilizations.....	106
Doctrine of the Millennium.....	110
Postmillennialism.....	111
Amillennialism.....	111
Premillennialism.....	112
Hebrews chapter two verse 6.....	124
Comparisons of the two Adams.....	125
Summary: the failure of mankind.....	132
Hebrews chapter two verse 7.....	135
Summary: superiority of angels over mankind.....	135
Hebrews chapter two verse 8.....	139
Summary principles of verse eight.....	144
Hebrews chapter two verse 9.....	147
17 different ways to describe Jesus.....	150
Seven points on the Uniqueness of Jesus Christ.....	154
Summary: “We see Jesus crowned as victor”.....	156
Summary principles of verse nine.....	160
Expanded translation verses 1-9.....	164
Hebrews chapter two verse 10.....	166
God’s plan is consistent with His character.....	167
What we need to remember!.....	170
Three Analogies to the Church.....	171
Jesus Christ is the Crown Prince.....	174
Summary of verse ten.....	175
Hebrews chapter two verse 11.....	177
Jewish Marriage Customs in Bible Times.....	180
Summary regarding the word “ashamed”.....	191
Hebrews chapter two verse 12.....	194
Principles of “anticipation”.....	195
Doctrine of the Church.....	197

Hebrews chapter two verse 13.....	202
Summary principles of verse thirteen.....	205
Hebrews chapter two verse 14.....	207
Doctrine of Spiritual Death.....	207
Summary principles of verse fourteen.....	224
Hebrews chapter two verse 15.....	229
Summary: fear of death.....	231
Summary: slavery in the world, but freedom in Christ.....	234
Hebrews chapter two verse 16.....	236
Summary: verse sixteen.....	237
Hebrews chapter two verse 17.....	239
Summary introduction of verse seventeen.....	239
Summary: verse seventeen.....	247
Hebrews chapter two verse 18.....	250
Summary: verse eighteen.....	254
Expanded Translation in Paragraph Form.....	255
Acknowledgments and Bibliography.....	257

HEBREWS

Introduction to Chapter Two

Hebrews 1:14 closed out chapter one with: “Are they not all subordinate spirits being sent into action for the purpose of service because of the ones (Church Age believers) being about to inherit deliverance? (from the devil’s world).”

This same line of thinking is continued in verse five of chapter two, **For unto the angels hath he not put in subjection the world to come, whereof we speak.** (KJV)

Outline of Chapter Two

There are four paragraphs in Hebrews chapter two.

1. Prologue: the angelic conflict is a warning to the human race, verses 1-5.
2. The two Adams and the angelic conflict, verses 6-9.
3. The bride of Christ and the angelic conflict, verses 10-13.
4. Epilogue: since mankind was created to resolve the angelic conflict, Jesus Christ came as a man and also God, the God-Man, verses 14-18.

We need to keep in mind that the elect or saved angels have a relationship with God through Jesus Christ, and function in the plan of grace. Members of the human race who have been born again also have a relationship with God through Jesus Christ, and they function in the plan of grace. But fallen angels have rejected God’s grace and are going to spend eternity in the lake of fire. Unbelievers in the human race have also rejected God’s grace through Jesus Christ and will spend eternity in the lake of fire.

For over 6,000 years there have been angels and human beings functioning at the same time on planet earth. They can see us, but we can’t see them. But, in the future, in the lake of fire fallen angels and unsaved human beings will be able to see each other, just as in the eternal future in heaven believers and angels will also see each other. All these things are brought together in Hebrews chapter two.

Vs 1: **Therefore we ought to give the more earnest heed to the things which we have heard, lest at any time we should let them slip.**
(KJV)

Therefore - Διὰ τοῦτο - DIA TOUTO. First of all we have the preposition διὰ - DIA, plus the accusative neuter singular of the demonstrative pronoun οὗτος - HOUTOS meaning “this, this one or he.” DIA plus HOUTOS should be translated “because of this, or for this reason, or for this cause.”

The writer is saying that because of what he taught in Hebrews chapter one, we ought to listen and take heed to what we have heard. In other words, because of who Jesus Christ is we had better listen and pay attention. Why should we listen and pay attention?

1. Because He is called “**Son**” and “**Heir**” of all things and the “**Creator**” of all things. (Heb 1:2)
2. Because He is called “**God**” the ruler of all things. (Heb 1:3)
3. Because He is the “**radiance of God’s glory and the exact representation of his being.**” (Heb 1:3)
4. Because He is the “**sustainer of all things.**” (Heb 1:3)
5. Because He provided “**purification for sins,**” He actually eliminated sin as an issue in salvation. (Heb 1:3)
6. Because He is the One who “**sat down at the right hand of the Majesty in heaven.**” (Heb 1:3)
7. Because He is the anointed One, He is superior to all others. (Heb 1:4)
8. Because He is worshiped and served by angels. (Heb 1:6)
9. Because He is the Eternal God, “**Your throne, O God, will last for ever and ever.**” (Heb 1:8)
10. Because He is the Lord of creation (Heb 1:10)
11. Because He is called “**Lord,**” the Sovereign of all things. (Heb 1:10)
12. Because He is unchangeable, “**but you remain the same.**” (Heb 1:12)

These are the things we studied in detail in chapter one, and now the writer is saying in chapter two, “Because of these things that I told you about in chapter one, we ought to listen and learn to what we have heard concerning Jesus Christ and His plan for the human race. Therefore:

1. Because Jesus Christ is the victor in the angelic conflict, Heb 1:1-4, Jesus Christ, the God-Man is the victor and no one else. You and I are victors in nothing and angels are victors in nothing. There is only One victorious person in all of God’s creation and that One is the Lord Jesus Christ. If you are in Christ, then you are a winner. When I use the word “winner,” I am referring to our position in Christ. All those “in Christ” whether good, bad, indifferent, moral, immoral, negative or positive are all winners in the sense that they as believers in Christ will each receive a resurrection body and will spend eternity in heaven with the Lord Jesus Christ.
2. **“Because of this.”** Because of what? Because of the Old Testament documentation verifying the superiority of Jesus Christ over angels. Hebrews 1:5-13.
3. **“Because of this.”** Because of what? Because the angels have been subordinated to believers in time, Hebrews 1:14.
4. Therefore, because of the angelic conflict the human race has received a warning: do not reject Jesus Christ. You are alive, you are on this earth and the worst thing you could ever do is to refuse to accept the Lord Jesus Christ as your personal Savior.
5. Jesus Christ as a member of the human race is the victor of the angelic conflict. Any member of the human race who rejects Jesus Christ as personal Savior will share in the ultimate destiny of all fallen angels which is the lake of fire.

Doctrine of the Angelic Conflict

1. Angels are created beings. In fact, in our study of Hebrews Chapter One we saw that Jesus Christ, the One who was superior to all beings and who is in reality God in the flesh, is the creator of all the angels and the angels were commanded to **“worship Him”** (Heb 1:6). The fact that Jesus Christ is the creator of all angels is recorded in Colossians 1:16-17, **For by him all things were created: things in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or powers or rulers or authorities; all things were created by him and for him. (17) He is before all things, and in him all things hold together.** (NIV)

2. Although angels are superior to mankind, they do possess a common factor with man, and that is the structure of their souls. Even though the bodies of angels and man are much different, they possess similar souls. Self-consciousness, mentality, emotion, volition (free will) and the ability to think, categorize and maintain a working vocabulary are all are parts of the mentality of the souls of angels and mankind.

Angelic bodies appear to be created out of light. They are able to move through space at will yet are invisible to mankind except on special occasions when God allows them to be seen by men. Heb 13:2 tells us that **“some people entertain angels without knowing it.”** (NIV)

Man on the other hand possesses a physical body that is very limited in its ability. Human bodies cannot travel through space and cannot make themselves invisible. We will see as we proceed with this doctrine that there is a specific reason designed by God not to allow man the versatility that angels possess with regard to their bodies. Angels are rational, superior and prehistoric to mankind. They existed in the universe before man for an unknown period of time.

3. The angelic conflict is the result of a massive rebellion against God and His government on the part of a group of angels led by the super angel named Lucifer. The angelic conflict consists of two phases:
 - A. The prehistoric angelic conflict before the creation of man.
 - B. The current angelic conflict which will run during the course of human history.
4. The prehistoric angelic conflict began at some point after God created the heavens and the earth in Genesis 1:1. **In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth.** (NIV) In the initial creation everything was created instantaneously. God spoke and everything came into existence. What was included in the initial creation? Beside all of the stellar bodies it included a very beautiful earth with plants and animals of all kinds. From the first century of the church there have been theological debates regarding the existence of a human race before Adam. A human race that was inferior and a race over which Satan ruled before his fall. Since most of the information regarding the preadamic civilization possesses very little support, I will discuss it briefly in my study.
5. In Genesis 1:1 the word **“create”** is from the Hebrew word **בָּרָא** – BARA meaning “to create something out of nothing.” In other words, there was nothing, then God spoke the word and everything existed in a

perfect manner. It should be noted that this word is not used for the “so called” six days of creation. Another Hebrew word is used, עָשָׂה – ASAH meaning “to make something out of existing materials.” The creation of man’s body was made out of existing materials taken from the earth. But when it came to giving man life, the word BARA is used. God created the soul of man out of nothing. He breathed into the nostrils of man and man became a living soul (Genesis 2:7).

6. Genesis 1:1 provides us with the record of God’s initial creation. “First, verse 1 has the form of a narrative declarative statement and not merely a superscription or title. Second, the conjunctive ו – VAV connects verse 1 with verse 2, which cannot be if verse 1 is only a heading or a summary statement or a topical statement. Third, verse 2 speaks of the earth as already existing, which must have come into existence in verse 1. Then between verses 1 and 2 there is a gap of time. In this gap of time was the fall of Satan and other angels, resulting in the divine judgment of the earth.” (Ariel’s Bible Commentary on the Book of Genesis page 28 by Arnold G Fruchtenbaum Th.M., Ph.D.)

The first phrase in Gen 1:2 it says: “*And the earth was waste and void,*” showing that the earth now becomes the focus. The earth and not the universe is the focus of the remainder of the chapter. The word *was* in Hebrew is *hayetah*, which is the feminine form for the word *hayah*. The normal primary meaning of the word *hayah* or *hayetah* is “was.” However, it also has the secondary meaning of “became.” Those who oppose a gap between 1:1 and 1:2 claim that for the word *hayah* to mean “became” rather than “was” would require the addition of a *lamed* prefix on the next word to read *hayah le ___* or *hayetah le___*. Generally speaking, that is correct, but it is not always true. Even within Genesis, where the word *hayah* or *hayetah* clearly means “became,” it is not followed by the *lamed* prefix. Examples include: Genesis 3:20, Eve *became* (*hayetah*) the mother of all living; Genesis 3:22, man has *become* as one of us; Gen 21:20, Ishmael *became* an archer; Genesis 37:20, what would *become* of Joseph’s dream. So, even within Genesis the word clearly has the meaning of “become” without the *lamed* prefix; and the same could be true of Genesis 1:2; and the way to translate it is: *and the earth became*. This harmonizes well with Isaiah 45:18, which clearly states God did not create the earth in the form described by Genesis 1:2, *For thus says Jehovah that created the heavens, the God that formed the earth and made it, that established it and created it not a waste, that formed it*

to be inhabited: I am Jehovah and there is none else.” (Ariel’s Bible Commentary on the Book of Genesis page 37-38 by Arnold G Fruchtenbaum Th.M., Ph.D.)

Therefore Genesis 1:2 should read, “**And the earth became formless and empty.**” God did not create it that way, “it became” that way because of the rebellion of Satan and the judgment of God on that rebellion which cursed the initial creation of the earth.

7. After the initial creation God placed Lucifer in His heavenly government and assigned him to rule in “**the Garden of God**” upon the earth.

Ezekiel 28:11-19; (NIV)

Vs 11-12; **the word of the Lord came to me: (12)“Son of man, take a lament concerning the king of Tyre and say to him: ‘This is what the Sovereign Lord says:**

The phrase “**Son of man**” is found 94 times in the book of Ezekiel alone. It refers to the prophet Ezekiel.

Take up a lament concerning the king of Tyre – As far as we know from recorded history there was no king of Tyre, only a prince spoken of in the first part of this chapter.

The word “**lament**” comes from the Hebrew word **יָיִן** – QAYIN (kah-yin) meaning “to wail, or to mourn, as at a funeral.” Literally, “Raise a cry of mourning concerning the king of Tyre.”

Everything that is spoken to the ruler of Tyre in verses 1-10 could be said of any earthly ruler. But in the “**lament**” or the judgment that is given to the one who is called “**the king of Tyre,**” we see that a being or a creature far above the realm of human life is in view. This “**king of Tyre**” is none other than Lucifer himself.

You were the model of perfection, full of wisdom and perfect in beauty -

The Bible teaches that God created the beings in the spirit world in ranks and orders. There has never been any equality in God’s creation and there never will be. The closest thing to equality is portrayed in the Doctrine of Positional Truth for all Church Age believers. But, then, we are only equal in what we receive at the point of salvation. After that point all believers are different. We have different spiritual gifts, and even those with similar gifts function in those gifts at different levels and degrees of effectiveness.

We all spend different amounts of time in studying the Word of God. Therefore, no one is equal with any other believer regarding his level of spiritual growth or Biblical knowledge.

Like an army which has its privates, noncommissioned officers, field officers, staff officers and a commander in chief, the spirit beings are in similar ranks and orders: angels, archangels, principalities, powers, seraphs, cherubs, etc. Out of all these orders of creation Lucifer was the greatest in gifts, power and beauty. As the KJV says at the end of verse 12, **“He was the sum total of wisdom and beauty.”** Lucifer was the perfect model.

So great was his rank and power that even after his fall Michael, the archangel, one of God’s greatest messengers, **“when disputing with the devil about the body of Moses, did not dare to bring a slanderous accusation against him but said, ‘The Lord rebuke you.’”** (Jude 9). In other words, even in his fallen condition, Satan retains all of his wisdom, power and beauty, and the elect angels of God cannot withstand him on their own, but must rely upon the Lord if they ever should go up against Satan and his army of angels.

This should teach us to have a healthy respect for our enemy. A respect that realizes that we are the safest when we entrust our keeping to the power of the Lord and relax in His will for us. Therefore, we should consistently learn Bible doctrine in order to increase our knowledge of our Lord and Savior. This also increases our knowledge of the strategies of Satan.

In this passage of Ezekiel we see that Lucifer is the highest, most beautiful, most powerful and wisest of the creatures of God.

Vs 13: **You were in Eden, the garden of God; every precious stone adorned you: ruby, topaz and emerald, chrysolite, onyx and jasper, sapphire, turquoise and beryl. Your settings and mountings were made of gold; on the day you were created they were prepared.**

You were in Eden, the garden of God — Eden here in Ezek 28:13 is not the Eden of Adam and Eve. When Lucifer came to the Garden of Eden in Genesis chapter three he was already in his fallen state. He had already rebelled against God. There had been a period of unknown years, possibly thousands or even millions of years from the time of his fall to the time of his appearance in the Garden of Eden where Adam and Eve lived.

“The garden of God” was the garden on the earth at the initial creation in Gen 1:1. Not only did it contain plants and animals, but it was a place of rare mineral beauty as seen by the description here in Ezekiel 28:13.

There are two other passages of Scripture which shed light on the meaning of the stones in this verse. One of them is almost a parallel passage, Exodus 39:1-13, which describes the garments that the Levitical High Priest was to wear. The precious stones mentioned there were a part of the high priest’s special breastplate, and are very similar to the stones found in our passage with reference to the Garden of God where Lucifer was the overseeing cherub. The second passage is Rev 21:19-20 where John describes the foundations of the New Jerusalem and gives a list of stones similar to those of our passage in Ezekiel 28:13.

Your settings and mountings were made of gold; on the day you were created they were prepared —

There has been much discussion regarding this passage over the centuries. But regardless of the various interpretations we see two important lessons here:

- A. Lucifer was created. In fact, the word **“created”** in this verse is the same word used in Gen 1:1 “BARA” meaning “to create something from nothing.” Lucifer, being a created individual, contradicts the argument regarding the eternal duality of good and evil. Satan and evil had definite beginnings and they shall also have definite endings.
- B. Lucifer was magnificent from the moment of his creation. He never knew a lesser moment. He awoke in the first moment of his existence in the full beauty and power of his exalted position; surrounded by all the magnificence which God gave him. He saw himself above all the other created beings in power, wisdom and beauty. Only at the throne of God itself did he see more than he himself possessed, and it is possible that even this was in some sense not fully visible to the eyes of this exalted creature.

Vs 14: **You were anointed as a guarding cherub, for so I ordained you. You were on the holy mount of God; you walked among the fiery stones.**

Lucifer was the chief of all created beings, and he was set in the government of God as ruler over the creation of God. God placed him in power.

You were anointed as a guardian cherub — This literally means “the protecting cherub with spread out wings.” The “spread out” wings of the cherub speaks of worship as in the case of the cherubim whose images were placed on the top of the Ark of the Covenant. So here we see the priestly function of Lucifer leading the worship of Almighty God. The cherubim even now lead the worship of heaven, and are near the throne of God (Rev 4:9-10; 5:11-14).

A further reference to his priesthood comes out in verse 18 in our passage, “**By your many sins and dishonest trade you have desecrated your sanctuary.**” The fact that Lucifer possessed a sanctuary indicates both worship and priesthood. Verse 14 literally says, “You were anointed as a guardian cherub.”

For so I ordained you — This brings in the divine prerogative. Even though in His omniscience God knew that Lucifer would rebel He still gave him his exalted position. God wanted it that way and that was the way it was.

You were on the holy mount of God — The word “**mount or mountain**” is used throughout the Bible to refer to government. Here it refers to the government of God. In other words, Lucifer was a part of the government of God.

You walked among the the fiery stones — This refers to the glory of God. Satan’s presence in the middle of the fiery stones (the glory of God) indicates the enjoyment of his position and privilege in the nearness to the throne of God.

Vs 15: **You were blameless in your ways from the day you were created till wickedness was found in you.**

You were blameless in your ways from the day you were created — again we notice that Lucifer was created. He had a beginning. We also notice that Lucifer was created perfect. God does not create imperfect things.

Till wickedness was found in you — Here is the beginning of sin. This phrase of Scripture declares that sin originated in the heart or thinking of Lucifer. It is important to note that this was the beginning of sin in the angelic realm, not the human realm.

Vs 16: **Through your widespread trade you were filled with violence, and you sinned. So I drove you in**

disgrace from the mount of God, and I expelled you, O guardian cherub, from among the fiery stones.

Through your widespread trade you were filled with violence, and you sinned — The words “**widespread trade**” refers to things bought and sold. In our passage it refers “to anything that passes through the hands.” For example, we would say, in common speech, that a judge who uses his high position for personal profit has “made a merchandise of justice,” or has “used his office for widespread trade.” So also, Lucifer, in his position of authority and power, attempted to advance his personal agenda.

So I drove you in disgrace from the mount of God — This is where Lucifer lost his position in the government of God. Jesus said in Luke 18:10,.....**I saw Satan fall like lightning from heaven.**

And I expelled you, O guarding cherub, from among the fiery stones — This is still future. Lucifer still has access to heaven even though he is not a part of the government of heaven. He will continue to have this access until the middle of the Tribulation period according to Rev 12:7-12.

Vs 17: **Your heart became proud on account of your beauty, and you corrupted your wisdom because of your spender. So I threw you to the earth; I made a spectacle of you before kings.**

Throwing Lucifer to the earth was his initial expelling from the government of God, but he still returns to heaven as an adversary of God’s people accusing them before God day and night (Rev 12:10).

Being made a spectacle before kings is still future.

Vs 18: **By your many sins and dishonest trade you have desecrated your sanctuaries. So I made a fire come out from you, and it consumed you, and I reduced you to ashes on the ground in the sight of all who were watching.**

By your many sins and dishonest trade — This refers to using his position to benefit himself and bring glory to himself. Self is in view here. The placing of self in an elevated position of arrogance and is the root of all sins in the human race, but it had its beginning in Lucifer.

So I made fire come out from you and it consumed you —

This refers to the beginning of the final judgment. At the end of the Millennial Kingdom Satan will be released from his temporary prison and will go out and tempt the people of the world and stir up a rebellion against the Kingdom of God on the earth. Rev 20:9 tells us that “**fire came down out of heaven and devoured**” the followers of Satan. The “fire coming out of Satan” (Ezekiel 28:18) is related to this event, indicating that Satan’s burning passion of power lust that was brought on by his own arrogance caused his final destruction.

And I reduced you to ashes on the ground in the sight of all who were watching — This is another phrase that mentions the destruction of Satan and his works, and the people of the world will see it.

Vs 19: **All the nations who knew you are appalled at you; you have come to a horrible end and will be no more.**

And all the nations who knew you are appalled at you — In other words, people will be shocked when they realize how stupid they were to be misled by this super creature.

You come to a horrible end and will be no more — The horrible end refers to the eternal lake of fire. The phrase “will be no more” means that he will not be able to bother anyone ever again. It does not refer to annihilation. That is a false doctrine.

Therefore, the situation Lucifer finds himself in today is because of his own free will. He made many bad choices.

8 The Rebellion and Judgment of Lucifer.

Isaiah 14:12-15, **How you have fallen from heaven, O morning star, son of the dawn! You have been cast down to the earth, you who once laid low the nations! (13) You said in your heart, “I will ascend to heaven; I will raise my throne above the stars of God; I will sit enthroned on the mount of the assembly, on the utmost heights of the sacred mountain. (14) I will ascend above the tops of the clouds; I will make myself like the Most High.” (15) But you are brought down to the grave, to the depths of the pit.**

When God judged Lucifer in eternity past along with all the angels that followed him, He then created the lake of fire for Lucifer and his angels at that time. Matthew 25:41, **Then he will say to those on his**

left, “Depart from me you who are cursed, into the eternal fire prepared for the devil and his angels.

9. There is no record as to how long the angelic rebellion was allowed to continue. The moment the rebellion began, God cursed all things living on the earth: the plants and the animals. Plants would be hindered by weeds, animals would begin to eat each other and, if there were people, they began to be hostile toward each other.

Because of our understanding of the character of God we believe that He gave Lucifer and all the fallen angels a time to change their minds and return to serving Him. It is possible that some did change their minds, and it is also possible that other angels who were not involved in the initial rebellion joined Lucifer.

However long the time was: thousands of years or millions of years, we are not told. That was all a part of the preadamic earth and a completely different civilization having no connection with the civilization beginning with Adam and Eve. But the time allowed by God came to an end, the door of salvation was closed for Lucifer and all the fallen angels. Then God destroyed the initial creation by packing it in ice and prepared to throw Lucifer and his angels into the lake of fire. Therefore, we know that this sentence was passed before man was created. The eternal lake of fire was to be the final resting place of the devil and his angels. Matt 25:41, **Then he will say to those on his left, “Depart from me you who are cursed, into the eternal fire prepared for the devil and his angels.”** The word **“prepared”** is the perfect tense of the verb ἐτοιμάζω – HETOIMAZO. Means “to prepare or to make ready.” The perfect tense refers to an action completed in the past which has continuous results. The perfect tense takes us back to eternity past before the creation of man in the Garden of Eden.

10. The name, Lucifer, means “son of the morning, or son of the dawn.” But after his rebellion he came to be known as **הַשָּׂטָן** – HA SATAN. Means “an attorney who slanders but gets away with it because of some legal technicality.” The Hebrew word SATAN means “a slanderer as well as an adversary. In the Greek, the word **διάβολος** – DIABOLOS, translated “devil,” means exactly the same thing, “an adversary, an attorney in law, a slanderer.”
11. When God sentenced Lucifer and all fallen angels to the lake of fire, it was inevitable that Satan would appeal the sentence, and at the same time malign the character of God. The blasphemous appeal of Satan

was based on a legal principle, possibly one which has come down to us today: “How can a loving God put His own creatures into the lake of fire forever?”

It should be noted that the actual blasphemous appeal of Satan is unknown to us. But the fact that an appeal was filed with God is deduced from the lapse of time between the sentence of fallen angels (Matt 25:41) in eternity past and the actual execution of that sentence in the future at the termination of human history in Revelation 20:10. That the sentence has not been carried out, but that Revelation 20:10 reveals that the sentence will be carried out at the end of human history which causes us to arrive at this conclusion.

12. God granted Lucifer an appeal trial. The key to the results of this trial would be the creation of a being lower than angels, yet possessing the same type of free will as the angels. The creature would be unable to leave the earth, as the angels do, and he would be given a choice to follow Lucifer or God. This choice would be tested by the placing of the tree of **“the knowledge of good and evil”** in the Garden of Eden (Gen 2:16-17;) If man ate from the tree he would suffer the same fate as Satan. But as long as he refused to eat from the forbidden tree he was safe. So the trial would soon begin.

This is where Genesis 1:3 begins. The Holy Spirit restored the earth in six literal 24 hour days. He made the earth habitable for man and animals.

13. God created man and woman and placed them in the Garden of Eden. A garden that was very similar to the Garden of God in the original creation.
14. The man and the woman were taught by the Lord every day. But Lucifer was allowed in the garden to attempt to persuade the man and woman not to follow God and not to believe Him. In tempting the woman, Lucifer’s attacks were directed at the character of God. Lucifer, ever deceitful, did not appear as he is, but indwelt a snake. Gen 3:1-7, **Now the serpent was more crafty than any of the wild animals the Lord God had made. He said to the woman, “Did God really say, ‘You must not eat from any tree in the garden’?”** (Here we see Lucifer questioning God’s truthfulness) (2) **The woman said to the serpent, “We may eat fruit from the trees in the garden, (3) but God did say, ‘You must not eat from the tree that is in the middle of the**

garden, and you must not touch it, or you will die.” (it should be noted that man would die spiritually the moment he ate of the forbidden fruit, and he would eventually die physically)

(4) **“You will not surely die,”** the serpent said to the woman. (Here we see Lucifer contradicting the Word of God) (5) **“For God knows that when you eat of it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil.”** (6) **When the woman saw that the fruit of the tree was good for food and pleasing to the eye, and also desirable for gaining wisdom, she took some and ate it. She also gave some to her husband, who was with her, and he ate it.** (7) **Then the eyes of both of them were opened, and they realized they were naked; so they sewed fig leaves together and made coverings for themselves.** (NIV) (Explanations provided by the author) The slander and the false accusations directed at the character of God is one of Lucifer’s most obvious traits. That is why he is called Satan and the Devil.

15. The man and the woman failed the test and, in the first phase of Satan’s appeal trial, they were forced to leave the Garden of Eden. They had died spiritually and they would eventually die physically. Adam had lost his position as ruler of the world. Satan quickly took over that position and has been ruling the world ever since.

But even though the man and the woman failed, God had a very solemn warning for the serpent and for Lucifer who used him; Gen 3:14-15, **So the Lord God said to the serpent, “Because you have done this, cursed are you above all the livestock and all the wild animals! You will crawl on your belly and you will eat dust all the days of your life. (15) And I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your offspring and hers; he will crush your head, and you will strike his heel.”** (NIV)

16. Since Lucifer, now called Satan, knew that his great enemy would come from the offspring of the woman, he set his sights on corrupting the women of the human race. Gen 6:1-8, **When men began to increase in number on the earth and daughters were born to them, (2) the sons of God saw that the daughters of men were beautiful and they married any of them they chose. (3) Then the Lord said, “My Spirit will not contend with man forever, for he is mortal; his days will be a hundred and twenty years. (4) The Nephilim were on the earth in those days—and also afterward—when the sons of God went to the daughters**

of men and had children by them. They were the heroes of old, men of renown.

(5) The Lord saw how great man’s wickedness on the earth had become, and that every inclination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil all the time. (6) The Lord was grieved that he had made man on the earth, and his heart was filled with pain, (7) so the Lord said, “I will wipe mankind whom I have created, from the face of the earth—men and animals, and creatures that move along the ground, and birds of the air—for I am grieved that I have made them.” (8) But Noah found favor in the eyes of the Lord. (NIV) Satan’s plan failed. There were eight human beings preserved by God to perpetuate the human race: Noah and his family. The angels that were involved in this sinister plot were thrown into a special compartment in ᾠδης – HADES in the center of the earth called τάρταρος –TARTARTUS where they will stay until the end of the Millennial Kingdom, at which time they will be thrown into the lake of fire. **II Peter 2:4, For if God did not spare the angels when they sinned, but sent them to hell (TARTARUS), putting them into gloomy dungeons to be held for judgment; (5) if he did not spare the ancient world when he brought the flood on its ungodly people, but protected Noah, a preacher of righteousness, and seven others..... (NIV)**

17. With the call of Abram in Genesis chapter twelve, God made a special covenant with him. Promising that through him all the nations of the world would be blessed. This is known as the Abrahamic Covenant. **Gen 12:1-3, The Lord had said to Abram, “Leave your country, your people and your father’s household and go to the land I will show you. (2) I will make you into a great nation and I will bless you; I will make your name great, and you will be a blessing. (3) I will bless those who bless you, and whoever curses you I will curse; and all people on earth will be blessed through you.” (NIV)**

With God’s call of Abram Satan now knew which family God was going to use to bring the One who would crush his head, as per Gen 3:15. The head is used metaphorically to refer to authority. Therefore, Satan then sets his sights on Abram and his descendants, Isaac and Jacob.

Abram (whose name was changed to Abraham in Gen 17:5), Isaac and Jacob was the focal point of Satan’s attacks until the children of Israel became slaves in Egypt. Satan probably thought that he had the upper hand at this point.

But in spite of Satan keeping the Jews in slavery for over 400 years, God sent a deliverer from the family of Levi, Moses. And God used him to bring judgment on all the demon gods of Egypt (Exodus 12:12) and delivered the children of Israel in a wonderful and marvelous manner.

18. Satan never sleeps and he never gives up. He sent a number of his angels to intermarry a few women in the land of Canaan. He probably thought that God would not destroy the world if only a few women were chosen in an isolated area like Canaan. Satan's plan was to attempt to keep the children of Israel out of the promised land. But the Lord intervened many times and gave Joshua great and miraculous victories which caused the children of Israel to settle in the promised land of Canaan.
19. God chose the tribe of Judah and the family of Jesse to raise up His chosen king. The Holy Spirit came upon David when Samuel anointed him to be the king of Israel (I Sam 16:13). Then in II Samuel chapter seven God made a covenant with David, known as the Davidic Covenant, telling him that one of his descendants would reign over the children of Israel forever. Satan now had a new target to focus on in this great appeal trial, the tribe of Judah and the family of David.

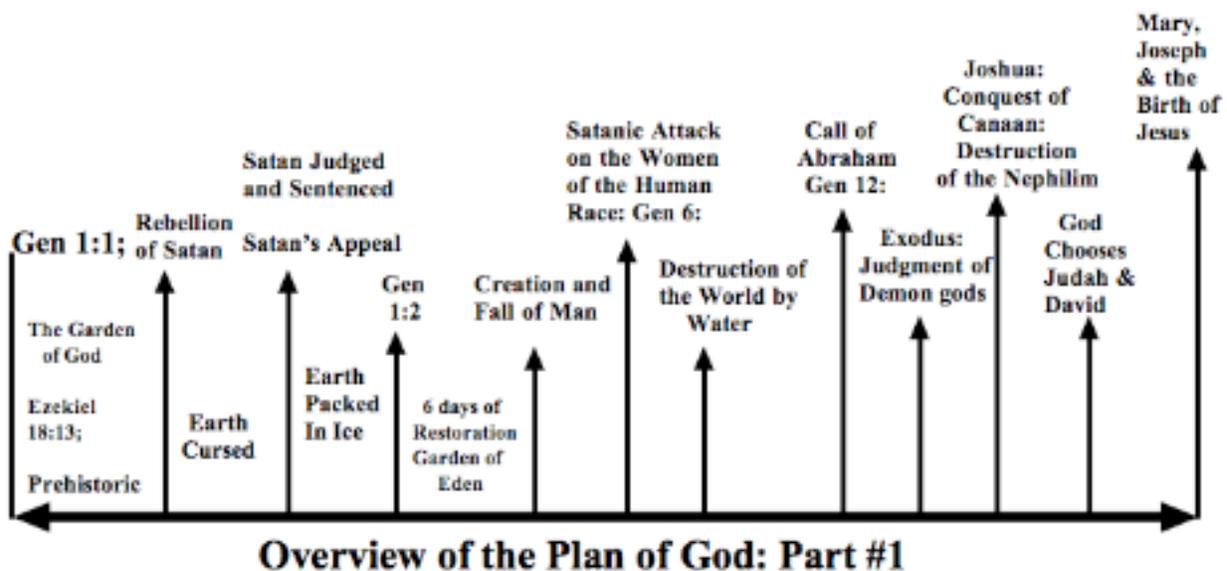
Throughout the Old Testament the line of David was attacked without mercy by Satan, but the timing of the birth of Jesus from the line of David was still on schedule. Both Mary and Joseph were direct descendants of David. Even though Joseph was not the real father of Jesus, he was the legal father. The Holy Spirit was the real father of Jesus, Luke 1:35, **The angel answered, "The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you. So the holy one to be born will be called the Son of God.** (NIV)

The original prophecy of Gen 3:15 concerning the coming messiah only involved the seed of the woman. Therefore, the messiah, the chosen one could not have a human father, because the sinful nature of mankind is transmitted from the father to the child in natural reproduction. (Gen 5:3, **When Adam had lived 130 years, he had a son in his own likeness, in his own image; and he named him Seth.** (NIV) The words "**likeness**" and "**image**" are very important to note; they tell us that all babies born in the human race inherit the "**likeness**" and the "**image**" of their fathers. That "**likeness**" and "**image**" refers to the sinful nature which all human beings inherit through natural birth. And because of the sinful nature in all human beings, all mankind is depraved and spiritually dead. All human

beings are born as enemies of God. Rom 3:10-18, **As it is written:**
“There is no one righteous, not even one; (11) there is no one who understands, no one who seeks God. (12) All have turned away, they have together become worthless; there is no one who does good, not even one. (13) “Their throats are open graves; their tongues practice deceit. The poison of vipers is on their lips”. (14) “Their mouths are full of cursing and bitterness.” (15) “Their feet are swift to shed blood; (16) ruin and misery mark their ways, (17) and the way of peace they do not know.” (18) “There is no fear of God before their eyes.”
 (NIV)

This is why the virgin conception and the virgin birth is so important. Jesus could not have a human father. If He had, He would then possess a sinful nature like every other human being. That is why the Holy Spirit came upon Mary and became the real father of Jesus, the Son of God.

Satan tried desperately to neutralize this threat to him. First by causing Joseph to reconsider his marriage to Mary (Matt 1:19). But an angel appeared to Joseph in a dream and told him to go ahead with the wedding to Mary, because the baby she was carrying was from God the Holy Spirit (Matt 1;20). Then Satan moved upon King Herod to kill all the babies in Bethlehem two years old and younger. But again God sent an angel and warned Joseph in a dream about the danger and told him to take Mary and the baby to Egypt (Matt 2:13).



- When Jesus was 30 years old he was baptized in water by his cousin John the Baptist. Immediately after his baptism, Jesus spent 40 days in the desert confronting Satan face to face with a variety of temptations and testings (Matt 4:1-11; Luke 4:13).

Satan's temptations and testings of Jesus focused on His deity. Satan knew that the chosen one of God had to be truly human. Therefore, if he could cause Jesus to use His deity to sustain His humanity, the work of Jesus could not count against him. But Satan failed.

21. At the time of the crucifixion Satan attempted to kill our Lord before He could get to the cross. Satan attempted this with the six trials, the multiple beatings, the scourgings and being forced to carry His own cross which caused Him to fall from its weight on His way to Golgatha. This caused the Roman guards to force Simon of Cyrene to carry His cross (Luke 23:26). Satan failed in this attempt also.
22. Jesus was crucified at 9 AM; at 12 noon a supernatural darkness came over the land during the the next three hours (Luke 23:44). Under the cover of darkness God the Father poured out all of the sins of the entire human race on His Son, and Jesus was judged for every sin of every human being. Than at the end of his sin bearing He said **“it is finished.”** With that, He bowed His head and gave up His Spirit (John 19:30). His human spirit went to be with the Father and His human soul went to Paradise in Hades in the center of the earth (Ephesians 4:9).
23. For three days our Lord's body was in the tomb, His soul was in an interim body giving a victorious proclamation to the fallen angels chained in Tartartus revealing to them the success of God's plan and the failure of Satan's plan (I Peter 3:19).

At the same time Satan was busy trying to secure the tomb so our Lord could not be resurrected. Roman soldiers were assigned to guard the tomb. But after the resurrection of Jesus, Satan moved upon the minds of the religious leaders to proclaim that someone had stolen the body of Jesus (Matt 27:64-66).

24. Forty days after His resurrection Jesus ascended to heaven and was seated at the right hand of the Father, the place of highest honor (Acts 1:3 and Acts 5:31). Jesus Christ in His humanity is now higher than all the angels, including Satan. And all those who are “in Christ” in the current dispensation of the Church are also higher than all the angels including Satan (I Peter 3:22).

Today Jesus Christ is currently working as our High Priest and our defense attorney, I John 2:1, **My dear children, I write this to you so that you will not sin** (not live in sin as a lifestyle). **But if anybody does sin, we have one who speaks** (the phrase “one

who speaks” is from the Greek word παράκλητος – PARAKLETOS, which means “an advocate, one who speaks for another, a lawyer or attorney.”) **to the Father in our defense—Jesus Christ, the Righteous One.** He is our defense attorney against Satan’s continued slander of believers in Christ. Rev 12:10, **Then I heard a loud voice in heaven say, “Now have come the salvation and the power and the kingdom of our God, and the authority of his Christ. FOR THE ACCUSER OF OUR BROTHERS, WHO ACCUSES THEM BEFORE OUR GOD DAY AND NIGHT has been hurled down.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

25. God sent His Holy Spirit to indwell all those who believe in Jesus Christ. He did this for at least two reasons:

A. The possession of the Holy Spirit is a guarantee that we are eternally secure and cannot lose our salvation.

II Cor 1:21-22, **Now it is God who makes both us and you stand firm in Christ. He anointed us, (22) set his seal of ownership on us, and put his Spirit in our hearts guaranteeing what is to come.** (NIV)

II Cor 5:5, **Now it is God who has made us for this very purpose and has given us the Spirit as a deposit guaranteeing what is to come.** (NIV)

Ephesians 1:11-14, **In him we were also chosen, having been predestined according to the plan of him who works out everything in conformity with the purpose of his will, (12) in order that we, who were the first to hope in Christ, might be for the praise of his glory. (13) And you also were included in Christ when you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation. Having believed, you were marked in him with a seal, the promised Holy Spirit, (14) who is a deposit guaranteeing our inheritance until the redemption of those who are God’s possession—to the praise of his glory** (NIV)

B. The possession of the Holy Spirit is provided for added protection and guidance to the life of the believer while Satan keeps trying to destroy the body of Christ on the earth and the Word of God it proclaims. Satan has a powerful ally in our sinful nature. Christians do themselves more harm than Satan could ever do because they do not live their lives in the controlling

ministry of the Holy Spirit. Many of the teachings and warnings in the New Testament to believers is for them to make sure they are controlled by the Holy Spirit.

Romans 8:6-9, **The mind** (φρήν - PHREN. Means “the intellect, the thinking and understanding.”) **of sinful man is death** (θάνατος - THANATOS. Means “spiritual death for the unbeliever, and temporal death for the believer.” Temporal death refers to not being controlled by the Holy Spirit.) **but the mind (PHREN) controlled by the Spirit is life and peace; (7) the sinful mind (PHREN) is hostile to God. It does not submit to God’s law, nor can it do so. (8) Those controlled by the sinful nature cannot please God.**

(9) You, however, are controlled not by the sinful nature but by the Spirit, if the Spirit of God lives in you. And if anyone does not have the Spirit of Christ, he does not belong to Christ. (NIV)

Rom 8:12-16, **Therefore, brothers, we have an obligation—but it is not to the sinful nature, to live according to it. (13) For if you live according to the sinful nature, you will die** (temporal spiritual death by not being controlled by the Holy Spirit); **but if by the Spirit you put to death the misdeeds of the body, you will live,** (putting to death the misdeeds of the body is a synonym for confession of personal sins leading to the filling of the Holy Spirit as per I John 1:9;) **(14) because those who are led by the Spirit of God are sons of God. (15) For you did not receive a spirit that makes you a slave again to fear, but you received the Spirit of sonship. And by which we cry, “Abba, Father.” (16) The Spirit himself testifies with our spirit that we are God’s children. (NIV)**

Romans 8:22-27, **We know that the whole creation has been groaning as in the pains of childbirth right up to the present time. (23) Not only so, but we ourselves, who have the firstfruits of the Spirit, groan inwardly, as we wait eagerly for our adoption as sons, the redemption of our bodies. (24) For in this hope we were saved. But hope that is seen is not hope at all. Who hopes for what he already has? (25) But if we hope for what we do not yet have, we wait for it patiently.**

(26) In the same way, the Spirit helps us in our weaknesses. We do not know what we ought to pray for, but the Spirit himself intercedes for us with groans that words cannot express. (27) And he who searches our hearts knows the mind of the Spirit, because the Spirit intercedes for the saints in accordance with God's will. (NIV)

PRINCIPLE: where the Spirit of God dwells, the spirit of Satan, fallen angels and demons cannot enter.

26. When God completes the body of Christ, or when the number of believers in Jesus Christ reaches the number which God has decreed, all Church Age believers living and dead, from 30 AD to that appointed time in the future will be resurrected. The ones who have died will be raised from the dead with a glorified body like that of our Lord, and all those believers living on the earth at that time will be given a glorified resurrection body as well.

I Thess 4:13-18, Brothers, we do not want you to be ignorant about those who fall asleep (in death), or to grieve like the rest of men, who have no hope. (14) We believe that Jesus died and rose again and so we believe that God will bring with Jesus those who have fallen asleep (died) in him (15) According to the Lord's own word, we tell you that we who are still alive, who are left till the coming of the Lord, will certainly not precede those who have fallen asleep (in death). (16) For the Lord himself will come down from heaven, with a loud command, with the voice of the archangel and with the trumpet call of God, and the dead in Christ will rise first. (17) After that, we who are still alive and are left will be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air. And so we will be with the Lord forever. (18) Therefore encourage each other with these words. (NIV)
(Explanations provided by the author)

I Corinthians 15:51-52, Listen, I tell you a mystery (meaning something that has never been revealed before): We will not all sleep (in death), but we will all be changed— (52) in a flash, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trumpet. For the trumpet will sound, the dead will be raised imperishable, and we will be changed. (NIV) (Explanations provided by the author)

Immediately following the Rapture and resurrection of all Church Age believers there will be the Judgment Seat of Christ where all Church Age believers will be evaluated. II Cor 5:-6-10, **Therefore we are always confident and know that as long as we are at home in the body we are away from the Lord. (7) We live by faith, not by sight. (8) We are confident, I say, and would prefer to be away from the body and at home with the Lord. (9) So we make it our goal to please him, whether we are at home in the body or away from it. (10) For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ, that each one may receive what is due him for the things done while in the body, whether good** (accusative singular of ἀγαθός – AGATHOS meaning “good of intrinsic value” referring to divine good, the good that is produced under the controlling ministry of the Holy Spirit known as the filling of the Holy Spirit) **or bad** (accusative singular of φαῦλος – PHAULOS meaning “worthless or bad” referring to human good. This refers to the good things done while under the control of the sinful nature). (NIV) (Explanations provided by the author)

The words “**judgment seat**” is from the genitive singular of the noun βῆμα – BEMA. Means “a step, a place to set the foot on, an elevated place ascended by steps, a tribunal, a throne.” In the ancient world the BEMA was a place where civil court was held in the center of most cities. It was a place where civil cases were settled. A judge had to make decisions regarding the affairs of its citizens. This tribunal did not deal with criminal cases and there were no judicial verdicts or any punishment. It came to be known as “an evaluation throne” where a judge would evaluate the merit of each case brought before him, and he would make a decision in favor of the plaintiff or against the plaintiff. In other words, the plaintiff would gain something or lose something depending on the decision of the judge. The types of cases would be similar to this: My neighbor owes me \$20 because I fixed the fence between our properties. The judged could say, “No he doesn’t,” and the plaintiff would suffer lose, or the judge could say, “Yes he does,” and the plaintiff would get reimbursed.

27. The moment the Rapture and resurrection of all Church Age believers occurs, the Church Age ends forever, and this marks the beginning of the Tribulation period which is the last seven years of the Jewish Age. According to Jesus, this will be the worst period of human history. Matt 24:21, **For then there will be great distress, unequalled from the beginning of the world until now—and never to be equaled again.** (NIV) This means that the Tribulation will be worse

than the fall of Satan and the destruction that it caused. The Tribulation will be worse than the days of Noah, which brought about the destruction of the world by water. The Tribulation will be worse than the Gog and Magog rebellion at the end of the Millennial Kingdom. The Tribulation is called by some “The Devil’s Desperation.” When the Rapture and resurrection of Church Age believers occurs, Satan knows that he only has seven years left.

28. One of the first things to occur after the Rapture of the Church is the calling out of the 144,000 sealed servants of God. These servants of God are of Jewish descent and are from the twelve tribes of Israel. Since the fall of Jerusalem in 70 AD, no Jew knows which tribe he is from. But God knows, and He selects 144,000 of them, 12,000 from each tribe to be the first ones to evangelize the world during the Tribulation period. Revelation 7:1-17, **After this** (after John saw a brief summary of God’s judgments of the earth in chapter six of the book of Revelation) **I saw four angels standing at the four corners of the earth** (I think we know that the earth does not have corners. This is an idiom referring to the four compass points, the four directions: North, South, East and West. If you notice there is an angel at each compass point. These four angels are assigned a special job. They are in charge of all the natural forces used by God to judge segments of the human race on the earth) **holding back the four winds** (the four winds refer to natural catastrophes) **of the earth to prevent any wind from blowing on the land or on the sea or on any tree** (this simply tells us that God’s angelic forces are restraining or holding back natural catastrophes until the earth can be evangelized). (2) **Then I saw another angel coming up from the east, having the seal of the living God** (the seal of the “living God” refers to eternal life, the imputation of perfect righteousness and also refers to a sealing ministry of the Holy Spirit). **He called out in a loud voice to the four angels who had been given power to harm the land and the sea:** (3) **“Do not harm the land** (this refers to earthquakes, volcanoes, tornadoes, violent storms, etc, etc.) **or the sea** (this refers to tidal waves and floods which are the result of earthquakes and volcanoes) **or the trees** (referring to droughts and famine) **until we put a seal on the foreheads of the servants of our God** (this refers to divine protection to the special Jewish evangelists in the first part of the Tribulation).” (4) **Then I heard the number of those who were sealed** (John did not see this sealing or count them himself, he only heard the number. Remember, he is in heaven. These are all racial Jews and regenerate Jews. They are scattered all over the earth and

they speak most of all of the languages of the earth. They are in a perfect position to evangelize the world. Again we see the perfect plan of God in this situation): **144,000 from all the tribes of Israel.**

(5) From the tribe of Judah 12,000 were sealed, from the tribe of Reuben 12,000, from the tribe of Gad 12,000, (6) from the tribe of Asher 12,000, from the tribe of Naphtali 12,000, from the tribe of Manasseh 12,000, (7) from the tribe of Simeon 12,000, from the tribe of Levi 12,000, from the tribe of Issachar 12,000, (8) From the tribe of Zebulun 12,000, from the tribe of Joseph 12,000, from the tribe of Benjamin 12,000. (7) After this, (after the 144,000 were chosen and sealed, and after they had evangelized for a time) **I looked and there before me (in front of me in heaven) **was a great multitude that no one could count, from every nation, tribe, people and language standing before the throne and in front of the Lamb** (in other words, they were absent from the body and were present with the Lord, as per II Cor 5:8).**

They were wearing white robes and were holding palm branches in their hands. (10) And they cried out in a loud voice: “Salvation belongs to our God, who sits on the throne, and to the Lamb” (11) All the angels were standing around the throne and around the elders and the four living creatures. They fell down on their faces before the throne and worshiped God, (12) saying: “Amen! Praise and glory and wisdom and thanks and honor and power and strength be to our God for ever and ever Amen!” (13) Then one of the elders asked me, “These in white robes—who are they, and where did they come from?” (14) I answered, “Sir, you know.” And he said, “These are they who have come out of the great tribulation; they have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb. (15) Therefore, they are before the throne of God and serve him day and night in his temple; and he who sits on the throne will spread his tent over them. (16) Never again will they thirst. The sun will not beat upon them, nor any scorching heat. (17) For the Lamb at the center of the throne will be their shepherd; he will lead them to springs of living water. And God will wipe away every tear from their eyes.

29. The Dictator of the Revived Roman Empire comes to power.
II Thessalonians 2:1-4, **Concerning the coming of the Lord Jesus**

Christ and our being gathered to him, we ask you, brothers, (2) not to become easily unsettled or alarmed by some prophecy, report or letter supposed to have come from us, saying that the day of the Lord has already come. (the day of the Lord begins at the start of the Tribulation) (3) Don't let anyone deceive you in any way, for that day will not come, until the rebellion occurs and the man of lawlessness is revealed, the man doomed to destruction. (the word rebellion is from the Greek word ἀποστασία – APOSTASIA. This word is composed of the preposition APO meaning “from, away from,” and HISTEMI meaning “to stand, to place, to establish.” Originally the word APOSTASIA meant “to stand away from truth or to depart from truth.” In later usage it came to mean to simply “depart.” To leave one place and go to another. This could be translated here “departure.” Literally, “when the departure occurs,” referring to the Rapture of Church Age believers.) (4) **He will oppose and will exalt himself over everything that is called God or is worshiped, so that he sets himself up in God's temple, proclaiming himself to be God.** (NIV)

Literally, “Concerning the coming of the Lord Jesus Christ and our being gathered to him, we ask you, brothers, (2) not to become easily unsettled or alarmed by some prophecy, report or letter supposed to have come from us, saying that the day of the Lord (the Tribulation) has already come. (3) Don't let anyone deceive you in any way, for that day will not come, until the departure (the Rapture) occurs and the man of lawlessness is revealed, the man doomed to destruction.”

It should be noted that the antichrist will come to power immediately following the Rapture of Church Age believers. But even though he is Satan's man, Satan will not personally possess him until the middle of the Tribulation period.

30. There are two special witnesses of God. Rev 11:1-12, **I was given a reed like a measuring rod and was told, “Go and measure the temple of God and the altar** (this is the rebuilt Jewish Temple in Jerusalem during the Tribulation), **and count the worshipers there. (2) But exclude the outer court; do not measure it, because it has been given to the Gentiles. They will trample on the holy city for 42 months.** (this refers to the last half of the Tribulation)

(3) and I will give power to my two witnesses (Moses and Elijah), and they will prophesy for 1,260 days (42 months, 3 1/2 years), clothed in sackcloth.”

(4) These are the two olive trees and the two lampstands that stand before the Lord of the earth.

(5) If anyone tries to harm them, fire comes from their mouths and devours their enemies. This is how anyone who wants to harm them must die. (6) These men have power to shut up the sky so that it will not rain (this was one of the miracles of Elijah in I Kings 17) during the time they are prophesying; and they have power to turn the waters into blood (this was one of the miracles of Moses in Egypt, Exodus 7:20-25) and to strike the earth with every kind of plague as often as they want.

(7) Now when they have finished their testimony (witnessing), the beast that comes up from the Abyss will attack them, and overpower and kill them.

(8) Their bodies will lie in the street of the great city, which is figuratively called Sodom and Egypt, where also their Lord was crucified. (9) For three and a half days men from every people, tribe, language and nation will gaze on their bodies and refuse them burial. (10) The inhabitants of the earth will gloat over them and will celebrate by sending each other gifts (some have called this the Devil's Christmas), because these two prophets had tormented those who live on the earth.

(11) But after the three and a half days a breath of life from God entered them, and they stood on their feet, and terror struck those who saw them. (12) Then they heard a loud voice from heaven saying to them, "Come up here." And they went up to heaven in a cloud, while their enemies looked on. (NIV)

31. Satan expelled from heaven. Revelation 12:7-10, **And there was war in heaven. Michael and his angels fought against the dragon, and the dragon and his angels fought back. (8) But he was not strong enough, and they lost their place in heaven. (9) The great dragon was hurled down—that ancient serpent called the devil, or Satan, who leads the whole world astray. He was hurled to the earth, and his angels with him.**

(10) Then I heard a loud voice in heaven say: "Now is come the salvation and the power and the kingdom of our God,

and the authority of his Christ. For the accuser of our brothers, who accuses them before our God day and night has been hurled down. (NIV)

32. The dictator of Rome becomes Satan's man. Revelation 13:1b-9,**And I saw a beast** (The word "beast" means "a living creature") **coming out of the sea.** (This refers to the "sea of nations" Rev 17:15 describes the "many waters" as races and cultures of various people.)

He had ten horns (this refers to the ten nations that comprise the revived Roman Empire of the Tribulation at some point in the future) **and seven heads** ((this refers to the seven world empires which have ruled the Jews: *Egypt*, 1700 BC, slavery for the Jews; *Assyria*, 721 BC, the Northern Kingdom destroyed; *Chaldea*, 586 BC, Southern Kingdom destroyed; *Persia*, 516 BC, the Jews were allowed to go back to the land; *Greece*, 320 BC, Alexander the Great took over Palestine; *Roman Empire*, 70 AD, Jerusalem destroyed; *The Revived Roman Empire* of the Tribulation at some point in the future), **and crowns on his horns** (This means that these ten nations started out as independent nations, but for one reason or another they are pulled into a confederation. Each of the ten nations had self-government, but lost it when the Roman dictator took over the confederation), **and on each head a blasphemous name.** (everything he does will be in opposition to the true God).

(2) **The beast I saw resembled a leopard** (the leopard is used in Daniel 7:6 to represent the Graco-Macedonian Empire. The leopard was used to represent the rapidity of the conquests of Alexander the Great. In twelve years he conquered most of the known world. The dictator of the revived Roman Empire is compared to Alexander the Great by the use of the word leopard, which represents the rapidity of conquest. This dictator will do in three and a half years what it took Alexander twelve years to do), **but had feet like those of a bear** (The bear is used in Daniel 7:5 and 7:17 to represent the Median-Persian Empire. There are certain aspects of this empire that are similar to the Tribulation. Cyrus the Great, the Persian king conquered the known world in 25 years. The bear does not represent speed, but power. The dictator of the Revived Roman Empire will have great power) **and a mouth like that of a lion** (the lion refers back to Daniel 7:4 and refers to the Chaldean Empire which had a fantastic administrative policy. The dictator of the Revived Roman Empire will possess the characteristics of the first three beasts of Daniel 7:2

and following: the strength, endurance and administration of the Chaldean, Persian and the Graco-Macedonian Empires appeared in the Old Roman Empire. This will also be true of the revived Roman Empire of the Tribulation).

The dragon (Satan) gave the beast his power and his throne and great authority. (3) One of the heads of the beast seemed to have had a fatal wound (one of the heads having a fatal wound refers the death of the Old Roman Empire in 476 AD), **but the fatal wound had been healed** (this healing refers to the restoration of the Old Roman Empire. That is why we have been calling the government of the Tribulation the Revived Roman Empire). **The whole world was astonished and followed the beast. (4) Men worshiped the dragon (Satan) because he had given authority to the beast, and they also worshiped the beast and asked, “Who is like the beast? Who can make war against him?”**

(5) The beast was given a mouth to utter proud (arrogant) words and blasphemies and to exercise his authority for forty-two months (3 and a half years). (6) He opened his mouth to blaspheme God, and to slander his name and his dwelling place and those who live in heaven. (7) He was given power to make war against the saints and to conquer them. And he was given authority over every tribe, people, language and nation. (8) All inhabitants of the earth will worship the beast—all whose names have not been written in the book of life belonging to the Lamb that was slain from the creation of the world. (9) He who has an ear, let him hear. (NIV)

33. The dictator of Palestine becomes Satan’s man. Revelation 13:11-18, **Then I saw another beast, coming out of the earth** (the Greek word γῆ – GE meaning “land.” This refers to the land of Israel, the area of Palestine). **He had two horns like a lamb** (horns are symbolic for strength and kingly power. The word “**lamb**” refers to a sacrificial lamb. This dictator coming to power in palestine will claim to be the Jewish Messiah. Therefore he is a false Christ, a false Messiah), **but spoke like a dragon** (speaking like a dragon means that this dictator will also speak with the genius of Satan).

(12) He exercised all the authority of the first beast on his behalf, and made the earth and its inhabitants worship the first beast, whose fatal wound had been healed. (13) And he

performed great and miraculous signs, even causing fire to come down from heaven to earth in full view of men. (14) Because of the signs he was given power to do on behalf of the first beast, he deceived the inhabitants of the earth. He ordered them to set up an image in honor of the beast who was wounded by the sword and yet lived.

(15) He was given power to give breath to the image of the first beast, so that it could speak and cause all who refused to worship the image to be killed. (16) He also forced everyone, small and great, rich and poor, free and slave, to receive a mark on his right hand or on his forehead, (17) so that no one could buy or sell unless he had the mark, which is the name of the beast or the number of his name.

(18) This calls for wisdom. If anyone has insight, let him calculate the number of the beast, for it is man's number. His number is 666. (NIV) The number 666 is not a mystical number. The number 6 in the Bible refers to the number of man or mankind. The number 3 is the number of divine perfection. Therefore the number (666) three sixes simply refers to a man claiming to be god.

34. The abomination of desolation is spoken of by Daniel and by Jesus who quoted Daniel. This refers to the statue of the Roman dictator being placed in the temple of Jerusalem. Daniel 9:24-27, **Seventy sevens are decreed for your people and your holy city** (God promised 490 years to Israel in the future as revealed to Daniel) **to finish transgression** (this means to complete the 5th cycle of discipline on Israel), **to put an end to sin** (meaning "to seal up sin" referring to restraining it. This actually begins with the baptism of fire when all the unbelievers will be removed from the earth at the Second Advent of the Lord Jesus Christ. Then the restraining of sin continues with our Lord ruling with a rod of iron during the Millennial reign of Jesus Christ), **to atone for wickedness** (this means "to reconcile" and this refers to the regathering of Israel and the fulfillment of all the unconditional covenants), **to bring in everlasting righteousness** (this refers to the righteous character of the Messianic Kingdom, Isaiah 11:2-5; Jeremiah 33:15-18), **to seal up the vision of prophecy** (this refers to the fulfillment of all prophecy pertaining to the Jews) **and to anoint the most holy** (this refers to Jesus Christ dedicating the Millennial Temple).

(25) **Know and understand this: from the issuing of the decree to restore and rebuild Jerusalem until the Anointed One, the ruler, comes, there will be seven sevens** (referring to the 49 years it took to rebuild Jerusalem), **and sixty-two sevens** (meaning 434 years. 49 years plus 434 years equals 483 years, seven years short of the promised 490 years given by God to Daniel). **It will be built with streets and a trench, but in times of trouble.** (The Jews were attacked constantly by various Arab tribes in the land as they rebuilt Jerusalem. These Arabs consistently tried to stop the Jews from rebuilding and staying in the land).

(26) **After the sixty-two sevens, the Anointed One will be cut off and will have nothing.** (This refers to the Jewish Messiah Jesus Christ being rejected and crucified, as per John 1:11, *He came to that which was his own, but his own did not receive him.* NIV). **The people of the ruler who will come** (this refers to the Romans. They are the people of the antichrist) **will destroy the city and sanctuary** (this occurred in 70 AD).

The end will come like a flood: (with this phrase the writer moves to the end of the Tribulation period, which is the last 7 years of the Jewish Age): **War will continue until the end, and desolations have been decreed.** (27) **He** (the political antichrist of Rome) **will confirm a covenant** (treaty) **with many** (referring to the Jews and the religious dictator in Palestine) **for one seven** (seven years, but in the middle of that seven [3 1/2 years]) **he will put an end to sacrifice and offering** (sacrifices and offerings in the rebuilt Jewish Temple during the Tribulation Period will be stopped by the political dictator in Rome). **And the one who causes desolation will place an abomination on a wing of the temple until the end that is decreed is poured out on him.** (Translation and explanation taken from the study of the book of Daniel by pastor Robert H. Kreger)

II Thessalonians 2:4, **He** (the political dictator of Rome during the Tribulation Period) **will oppose and will exalt himself over everything that is called God or is worshiped, so that he sets himself up in God's temple, proclaiming himself to be God.** (NIV)

Matthew 24:15-22, Jesus is speaking, **“So when you see standing in the holy place ‘the abomination that causes desolation’** (quotation from Daniel 9:27. This *“abomination that causes desolation”* occurs at the middle of the Tribulation Period, 3

1/2 years after the Rapture of the Church, and 3 1/2 years before the Second Advent of Jesus Christ), **spoken of through the prophet Daniel—let the reader understand—** (16) **then let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains.** (17) **Let no one on the roof of his house go down to take anything out of the house.** (18) **Let no one in the field go back to get his cloak.** (19) **How dreadful it will be in those days for pregnant women and nursing mothers!** (20) **Pray that your flight will not take place in winter or on the Sabbath.** (21) **For then there will be great distress, unequalled from the beginning of the world until now—and never to be equaled again.** (22) **If those days had not been cut short, no one would survive, but for the sake of the elect those days will be shortened.”** (NIV)

35. The Exodus out of Jerusalem and the nearby territory. Matthew 24:12-22, **Because of the increase of wickedness, the love of most will grow cold,** (13) **but he who stands firm to the end will be saved** (literally, “will be delivered.” Delivered from death and the persecution of the Antichrist. This has absolutely nothing to do with salvation, but with physical deliverance.) (14) **And this gospel of the kingdom will be preached in the whole world as a testimony to all nations, and then the end will come.** It should be noted that the preaching of the gospel “in the whole world” at one time will take place during the Tribulation period and not before. “The end” spoken of here refers to the last seven years of the Jewish Age culminating in the Second Advent of Jesus Christ.

(15) **So when you see standing in the holy place “the abomination that causes desolation,” spoken of through the prophet Daniel—let the reader understand—** (Jesus is referring to Daniel 9:27)(16) **then let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains.** (“There is clear Bible evidence that the rock city of Petra is located in one of the three countries which are to escape the tyranny of the Antichrist when he appears on the world scene and heads up the one-world government.”) These three countries are listed in Daniel 11:41, “Edom, and Moab, and the chief of the children of Ammon.” Quotation from the book, “The Rose Red City” by Howard C. Estep.

(17) **Let no one on the roof of his house go down to take anything out of the house.** (18) **Let no one in the field go back to get his cloak.** (Jesus is emphasizing the urgency of the

situation here) (19) **How dreadful it will be in those days for pregnant women and nursing mothers!** (20) **Pray that your flight will not take place in winter or on the Sabbath.** (notice the prayer options here: *“Pray that your flight will not take place in winter or on the Sabbath.”* Since the Tribulation period is the last seven years of the Jewish Age, Sabbath observance will be a factor.)

(21) **For then there will be great distress, unequaled from the beginning of the world until now—and never to be equaled again.** (Jesus is saying that the Tribulation will be the worst period of human history. There has never been anything like it in the past, and there will be nothing like in the future. This means it will be worse than the days of Noah in Genesis chapter six; worse than the time of Sodom and Gomorrah in Genesis chapter 19, and even worse than the Satanic revolt at the end of the Millennial Kingdom in Revelation 20:7-10.) (22) **If those days had not been cut short, no one would survive, but for the sake of the elect those days will be shortened.** (NIV) (Explanations provided by the author)

36. Armageddon begins with the invasion of Palestine by the king of the south against the government in Palestine. Daniel chapters 11 & 12, Ezekiel chapters 38 & 39, Revelation 14:14-20, **I looked, and there before me was a white cloud, and seated on the cloud was one “like a son of man” (Dan 7:13) with a crown of gold on his head and a sharp sickle in his hand.** (15) **Then another angel came out of the temple and called in a loud voice to him who was sitting on the cloud, “Take your sickle and reap, because the time to reap has come, for the harvest of the earth is ripe.”** (Matt 13:30-39; *“the harvest of the earth is ripe”* refers to the Armageddon campaign with the invasion, destruction and the deaths of many individuals) (16) **So he who was seated on the cloud swung his sickle over the earth, and the earth was harvested.** (*“harvested”* refers to many people being killed, some will end up in Hades and torment, and some will end up in heaven)

(17) **Another angel came out of the temple in heaven, and he too had a sharp sickle.** (18) **Still another angel, who had charge of the fire, came from the altar and called in a loud voice to him who had the sharp sickle, “Take your sharp sickle and gather the clusters of grapes from the earth’s vine, because its grapes are ripe.”** (this is the same analogy as the word *“harvest”* except the word *“grapes”* is used. It refers to many people being killed) (19) **The angel swung his sickle on the**

earth, gathered its grapes and threw them into the winepress of God's wrath. (this group refers to only unbelievers) (20) **They were trampled in the winepress outside of the city, and blood flowed out of the press, rising as high as the horses' bridles for a distance of 1,600 stadia** (about 180 miles). (NIV)
(Explanations provided by the author)

This passage explains the warning given by Jesus in Matt 24:15-22. The warning to leave Jerusalem as quickly as possible when they see the statue of the Roman dictator placed in the Temple in Jerusalem, called **“the abomination that causes desolation.”**

37. Ecumenical religion destroyed, Revelation chapters 17 & 18.

38. A Jewish remnant in Jerusalem forms a resistance against the invasion. Zechariah 12:1-9, **This is the word of the Lord concerning Israel. The Lord, who stretches out the heavens, who lays the foundations of the earth, and who forms the spirit of man within him, declares: (2) “I am going to make Jerusalem a cup that sends all the surrounding peoples reeling. Judah will be besieged as well as Jerusalem. (3) On that day, when all the nations of the earth are gathered against her (the Armageddon Campaign), I will make Jerusalem an immovable rock for all the nations. All who try to move it will injure themselves.**

(4) On that day (the time of the Armageddon Campaign) I will strike every house with panic and its rider with madness,” declares the Lord. “I will keep a watchful eye over the house of Judah, but I will blind all the horses of the nations. (5) Then the leaders of Judah will say in their hearts, ‘The people of Jerusalem are strong, because the Lord Almighty is their God.’

(6) “On that day I will make the leaders of Judah like a firepot in the woodpile, like a flaming torch among sheaves. They will consume right and left all the surrounding peoples, but Jerusalem will remain intact in her place.

(7) “The Lord will save the dwellings of Judah first, so that the honor of the house of David and of Jerusalem's inhabitants may not be greater than that of Judah. (8) On that day the Lord will shield those who live in Jerusalem, so

that the feeblest among them will be like David, and the house of David will be like God, like the Angel of the Lord going before them. (9) On that day I will set out to destroy all the nations that attack Jerusalem. (NIV) (Explanations provided by the author)

39. The Second Advent of Jesus Christ. At the Second Advent of Jesus Christ He will accomplish seven things.

A. The Baptism of Fire, Matt 3:11-15, John the Baptist is speaking, **“I baptize you with water for repentance. But after me will come one who is more powerful than I, whose sandals I am not fit to carry. He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit** (prophecy of the coming of the Church Age. The Holy Spirit began to baptize believers into Christ in Acts 2:1-21) **and with fire** (the baptism of fire refers to the Second Advent of Jesus Christ. Fire refers to judgment). (12) **His winnowing fork is in his hand, and he will clear his threshing floor, gathering his wheat** (believers in Jesus Christ) **into the barn** (the Millennial Kingdom) **and burning up the chaff with unquenchable fire.”** (This refers to unbelievers being thrown off the earth and into Hades and torment) (NIV) (Explanation provided by the author)

Matt 24:36-41, Jesus is speaking, **“No one knows about that day or hour, not even the angels in heaven, nor the Son, but only the Father. (37) As it was in the days of Noah, so it will be at the coming of the Son of Man. (38) For in the days before the flood, people were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, up to the day Noah entered the Ark; (39) and they knew nothing about what would happen until the flood came and took them all away.** (It should be noted here that it was all the unbelievers who were taken away) **That is how it will be at the coming of the Son of Man. (40) Two men will be in the field; one will be taken and the other left.** (The one taken is the unbeliever, and the one left is the believer. He is left to enter the Millennial Kingdom. This is not a Rapture passage, this is a Second Advent passage) (41) **Two women will be grinding with a hand mill; one will be taken and the other left.”** (The one taken is the unbeliever. She is taken off of the earth and thrown into Hades and torment, while the believer is left to enter the Millennial kingdom) (NIV) (Explanation provided by the author)

The Bible describes two baptisms of fire which occur at the same time: the baptism of fire for unbelieving Jews in Ezekiel 20:34-38, and the baptism of fire for unbelieving Gentiles in Matt 25:31-46.

- B. The Antichrist and false prophet (dictator of Rome and the dictator of Palestine) will be thrown into the lake of fire. Rev 19:20, **But the beast** (dictator of Rome) **was captured, and with him the false prophet** (dictator of Palestine) **who had performed the miraculous signs on his behalf. With these signs he had deluded those who had received the mark of the beast and worshiped his image. The two of them were thrown alive into the fiery lake of burning sulfur.** (NIV) Both of these men were controlled by Satan. (Explanation provided by the author)
- C. Satan is chained for 1,000 years. Rev 20:1-3, **And I saw an angel coming down out of heaven, having the key to the Abyss and holding in his hand a great chain. (2) He seized the dragon, that ancient serpent, who is the devil, or Satan, and bound him for a thousand years. (3) He threw him into the Abyss, and locked and sealed it over him, to keep him from deceiving the nations anymore until the thousand years were ended. After that, he must be set free for a short time.** (NIV)
- D. The judgment of the nations. Matt 25:31-46, Jesus is speaking, **“When the Son of Man comes in his glory** (Second Advent), **and all the angels with him, he will sit on his throne in heavenly glory. (32) All the nations** (nominative plural of ἔθνος – EHNOS. Means “nations or cultures that are not Jewish.”) **will be gathered before him, and he will separate the people one from another as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats. (33) He will put the sheep on his right and the goats on his left. (34) “Then the King will say to those on his right, ‘Come, you who are blessed by my Father; take your inheritance, the kingdom prepared for you since the creation of the world. (35) For I was hungry and you gave me something to eat, I was thirsty and you gave me something to drink, I was a stranger and you invited me in, (36) I needed clothes and you clothed me, I was sick and you looked after me, I was in prison and you came to visit me.’**

(37) “Then the righteous will answer him, ‘Lord, when did we see you hungry and feed you, or thirsty and give you something to drink? (38) When did we see you a stranger and invite you in, or needing clothes and clothe you? (39) When did we see you sick or in prison and go to visit you?’

(40) “The King will reply, ‘I tell you the truth, whatever you did for one of the least of these brothers of mine, you did for me.” (Jesus is referring to the Gentile believers who assisted the Jewish believers during the Tribulation Period).

(41) “Then he will say to those on his left, ‘Depart from me, you who are cursed, into the eternal fire prepared for the devil and his angels. (42) For I was hungry and you gave me nothing to eat, I was thirsty and you gave me nothing to drink, (43) I was a stranger and you did not invite me in, I needed clothes and you did not clothe me, I was sick and in prison and you did not look after me.’

(44) “They also will answer, ‘Lord, when did we see you hungry or thirsty or a stranger or needing clothes or sick or in prison, and did not help you?’

(45) “He will reply, ‘I tell you the truth, whatever you did not do for one of the least of these, you did not do for me.’

(46) “Then they will go away to eternal punishment, but the righteous to eternal life.” (NIV) During the Tribulation Period Gentiles who have accepted God’s plan of salvation through Jesus Christ will possess the compassion and the desire to help the believing Jewish remnant. Those who are not believers will not possess this compassion and desire.

Therefore, it is important to emphasize that even though this passage appears to focus on the works of helping others in order to be saved, that is a very misleading interpretation and goes against what is taught throughout the rest of the Bible: *believing in Jesus Christ is the only means of receiving eternal life.* (Explanation provided by the author)

- E. The regathering of Israel to her homeland. Ezekiel 20:34-38, **I will bring you from the nations and gather you from the countries where you have been scattered—with a mighty hand and an outstretched arm and with outpoured wrath. (35) I will bring you into the desert of the nations and there, face to face, I will execute judgment upon you. (36) As I judged your fathers in the desert of the land of Egypt, so I will judge you, declares the Sovereign Lord. (37) I will take note of you as you pass under my rod, and I will bring you into the bond of the covenant.** (Passing “*under my rod*” refers to a system of separating and purging of undesirable animals. Here it refers to the Lord separating the saved Jews from the unsaved Jews) **(38) I will purge you of those who revolt and rebel against me. Although I will bring them out of the land where they are living, yet they will not enter the land of Israel. Then you will know that I am the Lord.** (NIV) This passage not only explains the regathering of Israel to her homeland, but also the Jewish baptism of fire, in which the Lord only allows Jews who have accepted Jesus Christ to enter the Millennial Kingdom. (Explanation provided by the author)
- F. The resurrection and evaluation of Old Testament believers. Daniel 12:1-3, **At that time Michael, the great prince who protects your people, will arise. There will be a time of distress such as has not happened from the beginning of nations until then.** (This refers to the Tribulation Period, the last seven years of the Jewish Age. Jesus spoke of this in Matt 24:21) **But at that time your people—everyone whose name is found written in the book—will be delivered.** (Referring to being delivered through the Tribulation Period) **(2) Multitudes who sleep in the dust of the earth will awake: some to everlasting life,** (this refers to the third phase of the first resurrection and includes all of the Old Testament believers as well as those who were killed during the Tribulation Period. The phases of the first resurrection: Jesus Christ, Church Age believers at the Rapture, Old Testament believers at the Second Advent, Millennial believers at the end of the Kingdom Age) **others to shame and everlasting contempt.** (this refers to the second resurrection which only includes unbelievers of all human history. This resurrection will occur one thousand years later at the end of the Millennial Kingdom).

(3) **Those who are wise will shine like the brightness of the heavens, and those who lead many to righteousness, like the stars for ever and ever.** (This refers to believers only) (NIV) (Explanation provided by the author)

G. The beginning of the burying of the dead from the Tribulation Period. Ezekiel 39:11-13, **On that day I will give Gog a burial place in Israel, in the valley of those who travel east toward the Sea. (the Dead Sea) It will block the way of travelers, because Gog and all his hordes will be buried there. So it will be called the Valley of Hamon Gog.**

(12) **For seven months the house of Israel will be burying them in order to cleanse the land.** (13) **All the people of the land will bury them, and the day I am glorified will be a memorial day for them, declares the Sovereign Lord.** This is the glorification of the Lord at the beginning of the Millennium (NIV) (Explanation provided by the author)

40. The Millennial Kingdom Begins. Rev 20:4-6, **I saw thrones on which were seated those who had been given authority to judge.** (*Jesus referred to this time in Matt 19:28, Jesus said to them, "I tell you the truth, at the renewal of all things, when the Son of Man sits on his glorious throne, you who have followed me will also sit on twelve thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel."*) **And I saw the souls of those who had been beheaded because of their testimony for Jesus and because of the word of God. They had not worshiped the beast (the Roman dictator, the Antichrist) or his image and had not received his mark on their foreheads or their hands. They came to life and reigned with Christ a thousand years** (this is the third phase of the first resurrection which includes the Old Testament believers and the Tribulational martyrs). (5) **(The rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were ended.) This is the first resurrection.** (6) **Blessed and holy are those who have part in the first resurrection. The second death has no power over them, but they will be priests of God and of Christ and will reign with him for a thousand years.** (NIV) (Explanation provided by the author)

With the regathering of Israel and the beginning of the Millennial Kingdom the Lord will fulfill his promise regarding the four unconditional covenants to Israel. All four will go into effect at this time.

1. Abrahamic covenant, involving spiritual and material prosperity. Gen 12:2-3; Gen 22:17.
 2. Palestinian covenant, also known as the land covenant. God promised Abraham and his descendants through Isaac and Jacob a large plot of land in the Middle East. Gen 15:18. This covenant does not involve any Arab group even though they are descended through Abraham. The only beneficiaries of this covenant are the descendants of Abraham through Isaac and Jacob.
 3. Davidic covenant promised a special blessing on a specific family in the tribe of Judah in Israel, David. II Samuel 7:11-16. The Lord promised David that He would give him a son who would rule and reign on his throne forever. That son is the Lord Jesus Christ. Twelve times in the synoptic gospels Jesus is called “the son of David.”
 4. The New covenant to Israel, which was first announced by the prophet Jeremiah. Jeremiah 31:31-34 and quoted by the writer of Hebrews in Hebrews 8:8-12. This is closely related to the new covenant to the church, but there are distinct differences. (These differences will be discussed later in this book.)
41. The Gog and Magog rebellion led by Satan at the end of the Millennial Kingdom. Rev 20:7-10, **When the thousand years are over, Satan will be released from his prison (8) and will go out to deceive the nations in the four corners of the earth—Gog and Magog—to gather them for battle. In number they are like the sand on the seashore. (9) They marched across the breath of the earth and surrounded the camp of God’s people, the city he loves. But fire came down from heaven and devoured them. (10) And the devil, who deceived them, was thrown into the lake of burning sulfur, where the beast and the false prophet had been thrown. They will be tormented day and night for ever and ever.** (NIV) It should be noted here that nothing is said about the judgment of Satan. The reason is that he was judged by God many thousands or millions of years ago. Therefore, at the end of the Millennial Kingdom, which marks the end of human history, the judgment that God pronounced on Satan in the past will be carried out.

PRINCIPLE: the entire course of human history is God allowing Satan to rule the world as a part of Satan's appeal of God's guilty verdict. The wars, evil, injustices, heartache, violence and the various types of suffering are all part of the appeal trial of Satan. And at the end of the Millennial Kingdom Satan is allowed one last attempt to prove that God is wrong and unjust, and he does this by instigating a rebellion against the kingdom of Jesus Christ on the earth immediately after his release from the Abyss.

Also, Satan is released from his prison in order to tempt and test all the members of the human race who were born during the one thousand year kingdom. These people were never tempted or tested by Satan as other members of the human race had been throughout the course of human history.

42. The resurrection of all Millennial saints and their evaluation. Because of the baptism of fire which removes all unbelievers from the world, there will be a need to repopulate the earth for the Millennial Kingdom. The Bible teaches that during the Millennial Kingdom that death will take a holiday and there will be great longevity of life. Isaiah 65:20, **Never again will there be in it an infant who lives but a few days, or an old man who does not live out his years; he who dies at a hundred will be thought a mere youth; he who fails to reach a hundred will be considered accursed.** (NIV)

During the Millennial Kingdom there will be perfect objectivity in the administration of justice. Isaiah 11:1-10, **A shoot will come up from the stump of Jesse.** (referring to a descendant of David. This "shoot" refers to the Lord Jesus Christ); **from his roots a Branch will bear fruit** (this refers to the Millennial reign of the Lord Jesus Christ. He is the "Branch."). (2) **The Spirit of the Lord will rest upon him—the Spirit of wisdom and of understanding, the Spirit of counsel and of power, the Spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord—** (3) **and he will delight in the fear of the Lord.** (Note the seven characteristics of the Messiah, Jesus Christ: *the Spirit of wisdom, understanding, counsel, power, knowledge, the fear of the Lord and he will delight in the fear of the Lord*)

He will not judge by what he sees with his eyes, or decide by what he hears with his ears; (4) but with righteousness he will judge the needy, with justice he will give decisions for

the poor of the earth. He will strike the earth with the rod of his mouth; (this refers to perfect leadership, a leadership that gives teeth to the laws of justice and righteousness) **with the breath of his lips he will slay the wicked.** (This refers to those who commit capital offenses during the Millennial Kingdom. (5) **Righteousness will be his belt and faithfulness the sash around his waist.**

(6) In verse six the prophet begins to describe the general characteristics of the Millennial Kingdom.) **The wolf will live with the lamb, the leopard will lie down with the goat, the calf and the lion and the yearling together; and a little child will lead them. (7) The cow will feed with the bear, their young will lie down together, and the lion will eat straw like the ox. (8) The infant will play near the hole of the cobra, and the young child put his hand into the viper's nest. (9) They will neither harm nor destroy on all my holy mountain** (the word "mountain" is used throughout the Old Testament to refer to a government), **for the earth will be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the sea.** (NIV) (Explanations provided by the author)

Therefore, because of the population explosion during this time there will be a need for the resurrection and evaluation of those who have believed in the Lord Jesus. This will occur at the the end of the Millennial Kingdom following the Gog and Magog rebellion.

43. The resurrection of all unbelievers of human history and their judgment at the Great White Throne will come next, and be followed by them being thrown into the lake of fire with Satan, fallen angels and demons.

Rev 20:11-15, **Then I saw a great white throne and him who was seated on it. Earth and sky fled from his presence, and there was no place for them. (12) And I saw the dead, great and small** (the word "dead" refers unbelievers only. When the Bible speaks of dead believers the word "sleep" is usually used. The words "great and small" refers to important people and the not so important people), **standing before the throne, and books were opened. Another book was opened, which is the book of life.** (The book of life originally contained the names of every human being who has ever lived on the earth) **The dead were judged according to what they had done as recorded in the books.** (Here we see another set of books. These are known as the books of works or

deeds) (13) **The sea gave up the dead that were in it, and death and Hades gave up the dead that were in them, and each person was judged according to what he had done.**

(This verifies that at the Great White Throne Judgment all unbelievers will be judged on the basis of their good deeds. Since Jesus was judged for all the sins of the human race, sin is not an issue regarding one's personal salvation, only faith in Christ is an issue. Therefore, all those who do not place their faith in Jesus Christ will be judged on the basis of their own works since they rejected the work of Christ on the cross for their salvation.) (14) **Then death and Hades were thrown into the lake of fire. The lake of fire is the second death.**

(15) **If anyone's name was not found written in the book of life, he was thrown into the lake of fire.** (NIV) It should be noted here that the book of life contained the names of every human being who would ever live on earth in time. When an individual placed his faith in the Lord Jesus Christ, his name remained in the book even after he died physically. But, if an individual never placed his faith in Christ, at his death his name was blotted out of the book of life and placed in the book of works. Therefore, at the end of time the only names left in the book of life would be names of those who placed their faith in the Lord Jesus Christ. So when John records in Rev 20:15, **"If anyone's name was not found written in the book of life, he was thrown into the lake of fire,"** he is referring to those who had not believed in Jesus Christ.

Regarding Satan, fallen angels and demons, their fate was sealed by God's judgment of them before the creation of man. Jesus said in Matt 25:41 that the **"eternal fire prepared for the devil and his angels."** (NIV) The word **"prepared"** is the perfect passive participle of the verb ἐτοιμάζω – ETOIMAZO. Means "to prepare, to make ready." The important thing about this word is that it is in the perfect tense, which refers to something that took place in the distant past and will continue on forever. The "eternal fire" was created by God long before man was created. And Satan was sentenced to that same "eternal fire" before man was created. But since Satan appealed his sentence, God delayed the execution of that judgment until the end of human history. That is why we don't see any judgment of Satan, fallen angels or demons. Since the demons were the offspring of the fallen angels, therefore, they will be sentenced accordingly.

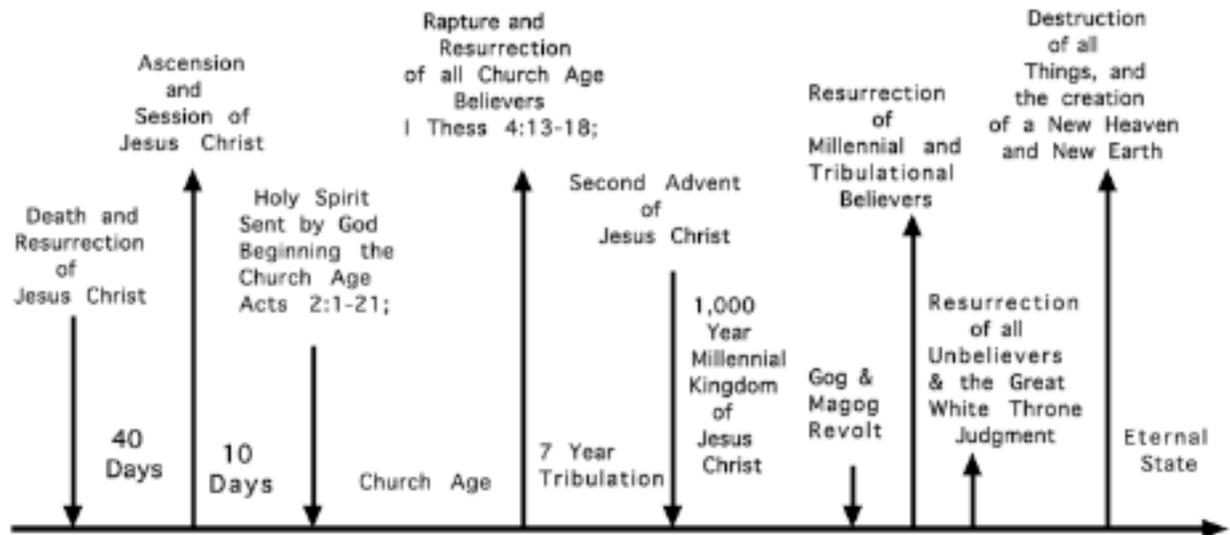
44. The destruction of the heavens and the earth. II Peter 3:10-13, **But the day of the Lord will come like a thief. The heavens will disappear with a roar; the elements will be destroyed by fire, and the earth and everything in it will be laid bare.**

(11) **Since everything will be destroyed in this way, what kind of people ought you to be? You ought to live holy and godly lives (12) as you look forward to the day of God and speed its coming.** (This literally says, “as you look forward to the day of God in earnest expectation.”) **That day will bring about the destruction of the heavens by fire, and the elements will melt in the heat.** (NIV)

45. The creation of a new heaven and new earth and the beginning of the Eternal State. Rev 21:1, **Then I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the first heaven and the first earth had passed away, and there was no longer any sea.** (NIV)

The entire universe is destroyed by fire, and human history comes to a dramatic close. Planet earth and the universe which were used for the courtroom of Satan’s appeal trial are destroyed and God creates a new heavens and new earth to be enjoyed forever by elect angels and believers in the Lord Jesus Christ.

This great strategic courtroom victory on the part of our Lord Jesus Christ over Satan, fallen angels and sin is summed up from the passage in Colossians 2:13-15, **When you were dead in your sins and in the uncircumcision of your sinful nature, God made you alive with Christ. He forgave us all our sins. (14) Having canceled the written code (the Mosaic Law), with its regulations, that was against us and that stood opposed to us; he took it away, nailing it to the cross. (15) And having disarmed** (aorist middle participle of ἀπεκδύομαι – APEKDUOMAI. Means “to disarm,” but the aorist tense tells us that this is a “once and for all action.” Jesus Christ completely disarmed Satan, fallen angels and demons once and for all.” Therefore, we will have no excuse for not living a life of spirituality which is pleasing to God) **the powers** (accusative plural of the noun ἄρχη – ARCHE. Means “the chief ruler, the head, the one in charge, a prince.” This refers to Satan.) **and authorities** (accusative plural of the noun ἐξουσία – EXOUSIA. Means “delegated authority.” This refers to fallen angels and demons), **he made a public spectacle of them, triumphing over them by the cross.** (NIV)



Overview of the Plan of God: Part 2

Hebrews 2:1;

Literally, “Because of this.”

we ought to give the more earnest heed to the things which we have heard, lest at any time we should let them slip. -

We - ἡμᾶς – HAMAS. Accusative plural of the personal pronoun ἐγώ – EGO refers to the unbelievers living in Jerusalem in 67 AD. This is a personal warning regarding the destruction of Jerusalem that would occur in 70 AD. This was one of the greatest catastrophes of all human history.

There is no indication that the writer of the book of Hebrews knew exactly what type of disaster was going to take place in the future. But he knew, based on the revelation of the Holy Spirit, that disaster was coming upon Jerusalem and Judea in the near future.

This personal pronoun **“we”** is used in a very interesting way here. The writer is a believer in Jesus Christ, but in this passage he is challenging unbelieving Jews. In using this personal pronoun EGO he is saying, “Look! I am a member of the human race also, and I come to you as one human being to another with a very important message. I come to you with a message about Jesus Christ. Since you have heard the direct positive message from the apostles, I am going to give it to you from the negative side. I’m going to warn you, **BEWARE OF MISSING THE PORT OF ETERNAL LIFE**, don’t drift by it. Because if you miss this port of eternal life you will face the stormy sea of national catastrophe. If you refuse to believe in Jesus Christ you will be

overtaken by national disaster. Believing in Jesus Christ not only secures your eternal salvation, but it also means that you will have personal safety in the coming war with Rome.”

Therefore the writer identifies himself with his people on a very personal and nationalistic level. We don't know who this writer was, but we do know that he was a Jew and he was a believer in Jesus Christ. The book of Hebrews is one of the most unusual of all the books in the Bible. As a believer in Jesus Christ he sees the desperate need of the hour, and he identifies himself with his fellow Jews who were unbelievers in an attempt to bring them this important message. Therefore, this little pronoun EGO translated “we” is very important.

Literally, “Because of this, we.”

Ought - δεῖ – DEI. This is a strange use of a word which is never used as a verb as it is here. The word is a present active indicative of δέω – DEO. It means “it is necessary, it is proper, it is inevitable.” This is an impersonal form to indicate necessity.

I want you to notice what we have so far:

1. “Because of this.” This refers to a frame of reference. You have to have a frame of reference, which means that you have to possess certain information. “Because of this,” because of your frame of reference, the pertinent information that is found in the previous chapter. The previous chapter is now in your frame of reference, you now possess that information. Therefore, because of this frame of reference, because of this information you now possess, something should be done.
2. “We,” the writer, who is a believer identifies himself with the unbelievers of his nation. He is a patriot, he is a believer in Jesus Christ and he has a message for the people who need it. Therefore he is willing to identify himself with them and in the sense that he is willing to die for his nation so this message could be given to all who need it.
3. The writer has a great sense of responsibility, as a spiritually mature believer must have. He must take the responsibility for his own decisions as he uses a very interesting verb form of the word DEO to indicate a logical necessity and the responsibility that goes with this logical necessity.

This verb that the writer uses for logical necessity was used primarily for those who were religious and legalistic. Religious people are the

most difficult people in the world to reach with the gospel message. Also, religious, legalistic born again believers are the most difficult people to reach with Bible doctrine. Religious unbelievers have many theories about getting to heaven, and the religious, legalistic Christian has many theories regarding the spiritual life and winning rewards and being blessed by God. Therefore, the writer of Hebrews is going to hit these religious people very hard.

Literally, "Because of this, we should, of necessity."

Religious people always have at least one thing they feel is very important. At the time of the writing of the book of Hebrews the Jews in Jerusalem were very religious, and yet they were in a state of unbelief. In their religion they had a number of things they felt were very important: they held on to the Mosaic Law, the Temple worship, the Levitical priesthood and the Levitical offerings.

When people are uncertain regarding their eternal destiny they try to find some tradition on which to anchor themselves. For the Jews it was their Temple. With their Temple they had a system of sacrifices and offerings, and they had a specialized priesthood, and even though the priests at that time were not even related to the tribe of Levi, they still functioned in the Temple. They had a lot of ceremony, a lot of religious activity, a lot of religious days, and they held on to these things with great desperation.

All through this great epistle we are going to see the writer showing them that these rituals, ceremonies and religious days had a purpose in the past, but their purpose has been set aside completely. In fact, there is a new purpose in life for believers, and that purpose is not related to the Mosaic Law, or to the Old Testament in any way. The life of the believer today is not related in any way to sacrifices, religious holy days, Sabbath worship, tithing, the Levitical priesthood, the Temple, or anything else connected to Israel. God is not using any of that today. He has set up a far better system than has ever existed in the past or will never exist again. That system is set up under one basic law: the law of the Spirit (Rom 8:1-4).

Under the law of the Spirit, everything is completely different. The Levitical priesthood is replaced by the Royal priesthood. This is a super priesthood and an eternal priesthood. The physical Temple that once stood in Jerusalem is replaced by the body of the believer in the Church Age. The Bible teaches **that your body is the temple of the Holy Spirit** (1 Cor 6:19).

The system of tithing has been replaced by grace giving, II Corinthians 9:7, **Each man should give what he has decided in his heart to give, not reluctantly or under compulsion, for God loves a cheerful giver.** (NIV)

Sabbath worship has been set aside and there are no special holy days today. Every day is to be considered the same as unto the Lord. In other words, we are to live our lives in the filling of the Holy Spirit, learning Bible doctrine and worshipping the Lord every day through the Spirit and through His word (John 4:23-24, Jesus is speaking, **“Yet a time is coming and has now come when the true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit** (the filling of the Holy Spirit) **and truth** (knowledge of the Word of God), **for they are the kind of worshipers the Father seeks.** (24) **God is spirit, and his worshipers must worship him in spirit** (the filling of the Holy Spirit) **and in truth** (the knowledge of the Word of God. (NIV) (Explanation provided by the author)

The things previously mentioned are only samplings of what we will be studying as we proceed through the book of Hebrews. The writer will present the concept of grace very clearly and very dogmatically. He will tell his readers in Heb 5:11 that **they are slow to learn.** (NIV) In referring to the Mosaic Law and the Levitical priesthood he will write in Heb 7:18-19, **The former regulation is set aside because it was weak and useless** (19) **for the law made nothing perfect, and a better hope is introduced, by which we draw near to God.** (NIV) Also Heb 7:28, **For the law appoints as high priests men who are weak; but the oath, which came after the law, appointed the Son, who has been made perfect forever.** (NIV) In Heb 10:8, **First he said, “Sacrifices and offerings, burnt offerings and sin offerings you did not desire, nor were you pleased with them”** (although the law required them to be made). (NIV) Then in Heb 11:6 he hits them hard with this statement, **And without faith it is impossible to please God.....** (NIV) So the writer will criticize religion and ritual throughout this epistle. And everytime he does, that is a slap in the face to those who think they can actually do something to please God. He will put down religion and ritual to lift up Jesus Christ and grace.

Jesus Christ is God's voice. He is God; to reject Him is to reject God. To reject God is to reject the reason for our existence. Because of the magnificence of the Person of Jesus Christ as portrayed in Hebrews chapter one, anyone would be a fool to reject the salvation He offers.

We must keep in mind that the writer is addressing religious Jews who are involved with the rituals of Judaism. They are so involved with rituals that they have totally missed the point as to who the rituals pointed to. All of the Old Testament rituals and holy days pointed to Jesus Christ. But when Jesus Christ came in the flesh, ritual was to be done away with. But the Jews in Jerusalem kept on with their ritualistic religion. Ritual was only a shadow of the reality to come (Heb 10:1). But after Jesus Christ came these Jews still followed the shadows. It would be like a man who loves a woman whom he has not seen for a long time. Then when he sees her he runs to her shadow and tries to embrace it while she is still standing there next to the shadow. You may say, "That is stupid, no one would do that." Well, the Jews did. They kept trying to worship God with the shadows of religion when the reality of Jesus Christ had already been revealed. Even today, many people are caught up in many types of ritual and don't see Jesus Christ because they are distracted by religious ritualism.

Literally, "Because of this, we should, of necessity."

This introduces the "logical necessity" for these religious Jews who were dabbling in the shadows of the law, and having an obsolete priesthood when Jesus Christ had come in the flesh and established Himself as the High Priest forever after the order of Melchizedek (Hebrews 6:20). Jesus Christ is now seated at the right hand of the Father, and the reality that He has left behind is no longer the ritual of a Temple with its animal sacrifices and holy days. Today we have the reality of a completed canon of Scripture which we are to "**study to show ourselves approved of God.**" (II Tim 2:15, KJV)

The Jews should have understood this because in the past God gave them manna everyday. On the ground was the manna. They would gather up all they needed and take into their tents. By the time the sun came up all of the manna that wasn't gathered melted away. But the manna they had taken into their tents was wonderful food, the best food any people ever had. To the people who were positive to the things of the Lord, it tasted sweet to them, but to the people who were negative to the things of the Lord, it tasted horrible. (Exodus chapter sixteen).

Manna was a picture, an analogy of the Word of God. Manna represented Bible doctrine. The negative believers did not like manna because they did not like God's provision. Because they complained and began to ask for meat, so God sent them meat and many of them died as a result. Revelation 2:17b, "**To him who overcomes, I will give some of the hidden manna.**" (NIV) The hidden manna is Church Age Bible doctrine, also called "mystery doctrine." The one who overcomes is the believer in Jesus Christ.

I John 5:4-5, **For everyone born of God overcomes the world. This is the victory that has overcome the world, even our faith. (5) Who is it that overcomes the world? Only he who believes that Jesus is the Son of God.** (NIV) In other words, if you have believed in Jesus Christ as your personal Savior, you have overcome the world. Because at the very moment of your faith in Him you were placed into union with Christ, and Christ is seated at the right hand of the Father, which means that you are seated there also. By being in Christ you are guaranteed a glorified resurrection body. This is a part of overcoming the world. Since you are a believer in Jesus Christ, and since you are in Him, God has given you the “hidden manna” to eat. We are to learn the mystery doctrine of the Church and assimilate it, or digest it into our souls in order for us to become what God has planned for us to be.

Every morning in the camp of Israel, in the bivouac of over two million people, there never was a day when manna wasn't there. Some of them were one step away from the sin unto death. Though the people were undeserving in every way, complaining and murmuring against God, He still provided manna for them. That is grace!

God continues to provide manna today. But today the manna is in written form, and the manna that God has provided is Bible doctrine from the Word of God. After manna was placed into writing ritual was unnecessary. The reality comes through the written manna, the Word of God. Matt 4:4, **Jesus answered, “It is written (Deut 8:3): ‘Man does not live on bread alone, but on every word that comes from the mouth of God.’”** (NIV) The only way you can put Jesus Christ first in your life is by deciding each day to learn some Bible doctrine. If you don't love Jesus Christ enough to put His word first in your list of priorities, you are never going to make it to spiritual maturity. You will flounder around like a fish out of water until God takes you home through the sin unto death.

PRINCIPLE: the reality of who Jesus Christ really is and what Jesus Christ really did will never be a reality apart from your knowledge of Bible doctrine.

Literally, “Because of this, we should, of necessity,” or “For this reason it is necessary for us,” or, “For this cause, we should, of necessity.”

To give heed - προσέχειν – PROSECHIN. The present active infinitive of προσέχω – PROSECHO.

PROS = prefixed preposition meaning “to, toward, face to face with.”

ECHO = verb meaning “to have, to hold, to possess.”

ECHO was a love word in ancient Greece. It meant “to have and to hold.” If you are having and holding someone “face to face,” is that reality or not?

PROSECHO refers to something as being as real as anything will ever be. Some of the Greek lexicons translate this word “to pay attention to,” which is a principle of love. If you love someone you “pay attention to them.” When you love someone, that someone is a reality in your soul and when you see that someone you may embrace them. Human beings are designed to embrace face to face. Did you ever embrace anyone back to back? No! When you have something in your soul and then you see it, it is a reality.

The writer is using this argument for unbelievers in Jerusalem who face the rituals of animal sacrifices, but they fail to see the reality of what those sacrifices represent. They thought the animal sacrifice was a reality, but the reality is Jesus Christ. Therefore, they were missing the point.

Literally, “Because of this, we should, of necessity pay attention.”

This is a very weak translation, but it’s about as close as we can come to the Greek and still have it make any sense in English. This actually means to have something in your soul so strongly that it is actually a reality to you. Therefore it connotes everything from “concentration” on what is communicated to giving “undivided attention” to something.

The more earnest - περισσοτέρως – PERISSOTEROS. This is a comparative adverb meaning “much more than we are doing.” In effect, the writer is asking that these Jewish unbelievers stop these rituals and listen. Stop the animal sacrifices and sit down and listen to what is reality.

The writer is saying, “You have ritual, you have beautiful music, you have some very impressive rituals. The high priest in his dress uniform was really something to see, and so were all the other priests, and so were the great Levitical choirs, and the musicians, and all of the phenomenal, tremendous, moving ritual. But it is all a pageantry of emptiness. It is actually going to hell in style. It’s empty and worthless. There is no reality in it any longer. The reality lies in who and what Jesus Christ is. Realize what He has done for you on the cross and what happened in the Angelic Conflict when God the Father said, **‘Sit down at my right hand until I make your enemies the footstool of your feet.’**” (Heb 1:13; Heb 10:13;)

Literally, “Because of this, we should, of necessity pay much more attention.”

To the things which we have heard - τοῖς ἀκουσθεῖσιν – TOIS AKOUSTHEISIN. First of all we have the dative neuter plural of the definite article used as a relative pronoun and translated “which” in the King James Version. This is a dative of indirect object giving great emphasis to what is heard. It is also a dative of advantage. It is to the advantage of the unbelieving Jews to listen and hear the gospel message.

Next we have the aorist passive participle dative neuter plural of the verb ἀκούω – AKOUO. Means “to hear, to listen, to obey what is heard.”

AORIST TENSE (constative) views the action of the verb in its entirety in one point of time. This refers to all of the points of time when they heard the gospel message in the past.

PASSIVE VOICE: the subject receives the action of the verb. This tells us that they received the gospel message a number of times over the years.

PARTICIPLE: the action of the aorist participle precedes the action of the main verb. The main verb is PROSECHO, “to have and to hold face to face.”

In other words, you have to hear before you can hold him “face to face.” PROSECHO, as addressed to the unbelieving Jews is the moment they believed in Jesus Christ. But you have to hear the message first, and they can’t hear and understand it while they are running around and going through all of this ritual. And the more rituals they go through, the more they will fail to see what is really going on. They were so involved with ritual that they lost touch with reality completely.

Literally, “Because of this, we should of necessity pay much more attention to the things which we have heard.”

The writer uses common sense in his witnessing to his own people, the Jews. When a believer reaches spiritual maturity he will never witness the same way over and over, because every person is an individual, and every person has different strengths and weaknesses with different likes and dislikes. Therefore the spiritually mature believer will be very flexible in his witnessing. The spiritually mature believer has so much Biblical information that he emphasizes one part of the gospel to one individual and another part of the gospel to another individual.

The writer of Hebrews was a spiritually mature individual, and God the Holy Spirit chose this man to challenge his nation in the hour of its greatest need. The challenge he gave was a spiritual challenge. The spiritual challenge is found in this passage. It is a fantastic challenge which is the challenge of deliverance, both for the individual and for the nation.

Lest at any time we should let them slip - This is the negative part of the verse. It is always the negative that impresses the religious individual. This is the application part of the verse.

Lest at any time - μή ποτε – ME POTE. First of all we have the negative ME. When ME is used and then followed up by an enclitic particle, this develops a negative temporal clause. Here the writer uses the enclitic particle POTE and it could be translated “lest at any time,” and that is exactly what the translator did.

Here we have one phrase that cannot be improved upon. But what does it mean? It means that “the time is short.” Then the writer relates this to the reality of the situation in Jerusalem in 67 AD. There were a lot of people occupied with ritual, ritual without reality. The reality is Christ, Christ is no longer in the ritual because He came in the flesh. Once Jesus Christ came in the flesh all of the ritual that was a shadow of Him is now meaningless. So the writer says, “The time is short,” this ritual is about to be destroyed.

This ritual which is blinding you to the truth is going to be removed. The Romans are going to destroy the temple and never again would the ritual of Judaism be the same. Why? Because God must not only curse the nation through disaster and dispersion, but He must also curse the principle of ritual which had blinded individuals to the reality. When ritual gets in the way of reality, ritual must go.

Therefore, the writer says, “The ritual to which you cling, the ritual on which you depend to get to heaven is about to be destroyed by the Romans. Anything the Romans can destroy could never be the means of eternal life.

At this point we would expect the writer to give the gospel message as we are familiar with it, or we would expect him to say something about the gospel. But not one word is mentioned about the gospel. Because they all understand the issue of the gospel, the writer will not repeat it. But there is a challenge which follows ME POTE.

Literally, “Lest at any time.”

We should let them slip - This phrase comes from one Greek word: παραρῶμεν – PARARUOMEN. The second aorist active subjunctive first person plural of παραρρέω – PARARREO. This is a compound from PARA meaning “to flow passed or by.” And REO meaning “to flow, to drift.” PARARREO means “to flow passed, to drift passed, to slip passed something,” like a ship drifting passed a port.

Here it is used in a nautical sense of a ship facing the possibility of a great storm and failing to reach the harbor of safety. By analogy it refers to salvation through faith in Jesus Christ. These Jews were drifting past the harbor of safety and salvation. When they drift past the harbor of safety, the storm is going to hit them hard. The storm refers to the Roman destruction of Jerusalem and the Temple. Therefore, the Jews were facing national disaster and they are warned not to drift past the only reality, Jesus Christ.

AORIST TENSE (culminative) views the action of the verb in its entirety but emphasizes the end result. In other words, if these Jews in Jerusalem continue on their current path in religion and ritual they will drift past the port of salvation.

ACTIVE VOICE: the subject produces the action of the verb. The Jews in Jerusalem produce the action of being so involved in religion and ritual that they failed to see the reality of Jesus Christ.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (mood of potential), drifting past the port of salvation is only potential. If they use their free will to believe in Jesus Christ, they will be safe in the port and not be destroyed by the coming storm.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 1: "Because of this, we should, of necessity pay much more attention to the things which we have heard, lest at any time we might drift past them."

SUMMARY

1. Religion and ritual causes people to drift past the reality of Jesus Christ.
2. The book of Hebrews was written three years before the destruction of Jerusalem and the Temple, which is one of the best documented catastrophes in all of human history. It is obviously one of the most horrible things that ever happened to a people. The suffering, the torture, the trials, the testings, the disasters (personal as well as national) are almost unbelievable. But all of this tragedy, all of this heartache, all of this pressure could have been easily avoided by the people in Jerusalem if they had only responded to what is taught in Hebrews 2:1, the gospel of Jesus Christ.
3. The concept of "drifting past the port of safety" refers to the rejection of the gospel of Jesus Christ through indifference, neglect and religious ritual. This resulted in many Jews suffering

in time, and then suffering in torment after their death, and eventually they will suffer in the lake of fire after the Great White Throne Judgment of Revelation 20:11-15.

4. We must be sure to understand that it is not the gospel that “slips” or “drifts.” The Word of God will never drift past us. The danger lies in our drifting from it. The harbor of salvation is absolutely secure. It is Jesus Christ who never moves, never changes and is always available to everyone who wants the protection and security of His righteousness.

An excellent example of what is being taught here is found in the story of William Edward Parry, an English Arctic explorer of the 1800's. Parry took a crew of men to the Arctic Ocean. They wanted to go farther north to continue their chartings, so they calculated their location by the stars and started a very difficult and treacherous march north. They walked for hours and finally, after becoming totally exhausted, they stopped. Taking their bearing again from the stars they discovered that they were farther south than they had been when they started. They had been walking on an ice flow that was moving south faster than they had been walking north. (This is a paraphrase of the writings of William Edward Perry, published and released in 1821 under the title of *Voyages for the Northwest Passage*. Plus the *Narrative of an Attempt to Reach the North Pole in Boats*, published in 1828).

There are many people who think that their good deeds, their merits and their religious ritual are taking them closer to God when in reality they are moving farther away from Him faster than they were supposedly walking toward Him. This is a great tragedy. One day they will wake up and find, like Parry's crew, that all of the time they had been moving in the wrong direction.

5. An individual should never be satisfied with religious feelings, with their church attendance, with church activities or with doing good deeds. All of these are fine and are things a believer should be involved in, but none of these things can give us the assurance of heaven. Only a personal faith in Jesus Christ and the knowledge of His Word can do that.
6. As we proceed in our study of Hebrews we are to remember that these Jews in Jerusalem in 67 AD were facing a national crisis. They were warned not to “drift by” the only safe anchorage, which is eternal

salvation through Jesus Christ. Such a salvation would make Jesus Christ both their Savior and their High Priest. But by dabbling in the shadows and rituals for the next three years, they would be moving into one of the great disasters periods of all history.

7. The word “shadow” that is used for the Old Testament rituals refers to “a reflected image, an imperfect and faint representation of that which is real, having an indistinct pattern. The Old Testament sacrifices were “shadows” or “reflected images” of the reality of Jesus Christ. They were “an imperfect and faint representation of our Lord.” The Old Testament sacrifices were “indistinct patterns” of the reality of Jesus Christ.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 1: “Because of this, we should, of necessity pay much more attention to the things which we have heard, lest at any time we might drift past them.”

Hebrews 2:2;

Vs 2: **For if the word spoken by angels was steadfast, and every transgression and disobedience received a just recompense of reward; (KJV)**

For - γὰρ – GAR. Conjunction used in an illative sense. Three basic uses of GAR.

1. GAR is used to provide an explanation and can be translated “that is.”
2. GAR is used to express a confirmation or an assurance of something, this is the emphatic use of GAR and can be translated “indeed or certainly.”
3. GAR is used to express a basis or a reason for something. This is called the illative use of GAR. Under this condition it can be translated “for,” and that is how it is used here in our passage. The illative use of GAR translated “for.”

Sometimes you will be able to recognize the Greek word GAR from your English Bible by the word “for” at the beginning of a sentence, or by the words “that is,” or by the words “indeed or certainly.”

Here in the beginning of Hebrews 2:2 we have the illative use of the particle GAR to express or introduce a reason. Here we see the reason why unsaved Jews “should pay much more attention” to the gospel message than they ever have before. “Because the time is short.” And they are about to face great national and personal disaster. At the time of that national disaster there were about a million Jews living in Jerusalem. Nine hundred thousand will die and over 90,000 will go into slavery. The writer is telling his fellow Jews that the only way to avoid these things is to respond to the gospel, to believe in Jesus Christ and to learn and apply Bible doctrine.

If - εἰ – EI. Particle used to introduce a first class conditional clause. Conditional clauses have two parts to them: the protasis, which is the “if” clause and is known as the supposition or the protasis. A supposition refers to that which is supposed, or thinking that is hypothetical. The second part of a conditional clause is the apodosis also known as the result clause. In the first class conditional clause the writer views the supposition from the standpoint of reality.

Literally, “For if (and it is true).”

The word - ὁ λόγος – HO LOGOS. Means “word, a thing spoken, speech, talk, language.” Here it refers to angelic communication. This refers to the angelic teaching of the Mosaic Law to Moses and the other Jews of that generation.

The Mosaic Law contains many laws and principles related to establishment and to the principles of human freedom. All of these things had to be communicated to the Jews. The only qualified teachers in Israel at the beginning were Moses and Aaron. Eventually there were 70 men who acted as administrators. But Israel had over two million adults and only two teachers, that is one teacher per million. Therefore, God in His grace found a way to teach the Jews. He taught them through angels.

Angels were the teachers of the Jews in the Exodus generation. HO LOGOS summarizes all of the teaching conducted by angels. It does not include the teaching by Moses and Aaron who were bona fide teachers of the Word of God. This is a specific reference to angels acting as teaching pastors, the angels acting as communicators of the Mosaic Law. We need to keep in mind that the Mosaic Law was much more than just the ten commandments. The ten commandments were only one part of the Mosaic Law. The Mosaic Law actually had three parts:

1. Codex #1: The Ten Commandments
2. Codex #2: The Ordinances or the spiritual code
3. Codex #3: The Judgments, the establishment code.

The Mosaic Law includes practically all of Exodus and Leviticus, part of Numbers and all of Deuteronomy.

The confirmation that angels taught the Mosaic Law is found in Psalm 68:17, **The chariots of God are tens of thousands and thousands of thousands; the Lord has come from Sinai into his sanctuary.** (NIV) At Mount Sinai, where Moses was given the law the Lord was accompanied by many angels. In Deuteronomy 33:2 Moses himself says, **“.....The Lord came from Sinai and dawned over them from Seir; he shone forth from Mount Paran. He came with myriads of holy ones from the south, from his mountain slopes.”** (NIV) This indicates that angels were involved in bringing the law.

Acts 7:38 specifically mentions that at least one angel was with Moses at Mount Sinai, **He was in the assembly in the desert, with the angel who spoke to him on Mount Sinai, and with our fathers; and he received living words to pass on to us.** (NIV) Then in Acts 7:53 it says, **You who have received the law that was put into effect through angels but have not obeyed it.** (NIV) Galatians 3:19b,**The law was put into effect through angels by a mediator.** (NIV)

Both the Old and New Testaments tell us that angels were at Mount Sinai and were instrumental in bringing the law to Moses. All of these passages teach that angels communicated Bible doctrine for Old Testament believers. Angels taught the Jews. Therefore, the Jews had two types of teachers: first of all they had angelic teachers. Second, they had one of the greatest communicators of all time, Moses.

Combining both the Old and New Testaments, Moses is called “**the servant of the Lord,**” thirty five times. This phrase is used 34 times in the Old Testament and once in the New Testament. The number 30 being composed of three tens denotes a higher degree of divine order, plus the number five, which is the Biblical number of grace. Therefore, Moses is considered in the Bible to be one of the most outstanding individuals in the Old Testament.

The Exodus generation was a generation of negative believers. They had the best Bible teaching in the world at that time: the angels taught them, Moses taught them, Aaron did some teaching and Jesus Christ was also involved in teaching as “the angel of the Lord.” Yet they were negative to the things of God. Apart from a few exceptions, they rejected the Word of God.

Angels taught the Mosaic Law, and in teaching this they were teaching shadows. They were teaching principles related to the spiritual life which was in the form of shadows, analogies and illustrations. Some of the information in the Mosaic Law dealt with establishment and was not in shadow form. There were many parts of the Mosaic Law that dealt with Christology, soteriology and eschatology and other great spiritual doctrines. But when these doctrines were taught they were taught in shadow form.

Angels communicated the principles of the altar, animal sacrifices, the significance of the showbread, the importance of the veil, the golden altar in front of the veil and the principles connected with the Ark of the Covenant and the Mercy Seat. Because all of the items in the Tabernacle were based on the heavenly temple, the angels were very educated in these things. Exodus 25:8-9, The Lord in speaking to Moses said, “**Then have them make a sanctuary for me, and I will dwell among them. (9) Make this tabernacle and all its furnishing exactly like the pattern I will show you.**” (NIV) The pattern is explained in Hebrews 9:24. Exodus 27:8, again the Lord is speaking to Moses, “**Make the altar hollow, out of boards. It is to be made just as you were shown on the mountain.**” (NIV) In Hebrews 9:24 the pattern that Moses was to use is explained. **For Christ did not enter a man-made sanctuary THAT WAS ONLY A COPY OF THE TRUE ONE; he entered heaven itself, now to appear for us in God’s presence.** (NIV) (Emphasis

provided by the author) All of these things were very carefully explained to the Jews. These things involved ritual, and ritual would be used to teach many thousands and thousands of people for centuries.

In our passage of Hebrews chapter two we see angels still teaching shadows which is all they know. Men, like the writer of Hebrews, are teaching the reality. The entire mission of the angels is now inferior to the mission of mankind because of the work of Jesus Christ, His resurrection, ascension and session.

The protasis or supposition of the first class conditional clause in Heb 2:2 recognizes the fact that if the angels taught shadows and man teaches the mystery doctrine of the reality, the teaching of angels has been replaced by the teaching of the reality, which is Jesus Christ. Heb 10:1a tells us that **“the law is only a shadow of the good things that are coming—not the realities themselves.....”** (NIV)

The Jews in Jerusalem in 67 AD were still involved in the shadows of the Mosaic Law. The reality had come, the reality had been taught in Jerusalem and yet the Jews were still offering animal sacrifices. They were still dabbling in the shadows and because of this many of them had neglected the gospel of Jesus Christ. We will see later in our study of Hebrews that many of the Jews who accepted Jesus Christ as personal Savior actually turned negative and went back to the shadows of the Mosaic Law and the Levitical offerings in the Jewish Temple. Therefore they retrogressed in their spiritual lives, went negative to sound Biblical teaching and returned to the shadow rituals.

Here at the beginning of chapter two we see the unbelieving Jews living in the shadow worship of the Mosaic Law, and in a state of negative volition to the gospel of Jesus Christ. Then in chapter five beginning in verse 11 through chapter 6 we will see Jewish believers who turn negative to the teaching of Biblical truth and begin to return to the Temple and the shadow ritual. The writer says that **“they crucify to themselves the Son of God afresh, and put him to open shame.”** (Heb 6:6) (KJV)

Therefore, both the unbeliever and believer become negative to divine truth and both get involved with the shadows and rituals of the Mosaic Law. With the believer it is as it is written in Hebrews 6:6 **“crucify to themselves the Son of God afresh and putting him to open shame,”** while the unbeliever is “drifting past the port of eternal salvation” (Heb 2:1). Both were dabbling in shadows and the shadows were administered by angels.

Since the coming of the Holy Spirit at Pentecost in Acts chapter two, man has become superior to angels when he places his faith in the Lord Jesus Christ. (He is only superior to angels because of being in Christ), we get the Word of God through the teaching of the Holy Spirit by means of the spiritual gift of pastor-teacher. Certain men are provided with the spiritual gift of pastor-teacher, and in the provision of that gift members of the human race in a body of corruption can communicate things that angels know nothing about.

The Church Age is the age of mystery doctrine. Not only did the Old Testament believers know nothing about it, but neither did the angels. The angels could communicate the Mosaic Law because they knew the Law. In God's grace plan men, beginning with the apostles and continuing in every generation with pastor-teachers, came the communication of things that angels did not know of. In Ephesians 3:10 we are told, **His intent was that now, through the church, the manifold wisdom of God should be made known to the rulers and authorities in the heavenly realms** (referring to angels).

Angels learn the wonderful things of God from the church in this age. That means that those few churches who teach Bible doctrine are probably crowded beyond capacity with angelic bodies. That should cause you to realize the importance of Bible class. The function of Bible classes is another area where Satan is defeated in the Angelic Conflict. Satan thought that he had a chance as long as angels were teaching. Because he understood the angelic mind, he knew how to counter angelic teaching. But that has all changed now because mankind is now responsible for the teaching of Bible doctrine. The Word of God is completed and angels have nothing to do with its communication. The power to communicate Bible doctrine today belongs to God the Holy Spirit through the spiritual gift of pastor-teacher.

The question is often raised, "How did believers learn Bible doctrine in the Old Testament without the Holy Spirit?" Many didn't learn, but those who did were under a totally different system of grace than we have today. With angels teaching they didn't need the indwelling of the Holy Spirit. Very few believers in the Old Testament had anything to do with the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit had not been given to believers in the Old Testament. John 7:39, tells us that **Up to that time the Spirit had not been given, since Jesus had not yet been glorified.** (NIV) His glorification was being seated at the right hand of God the Father and is related to the Angelic Conflict. Since Jesus Christ was not yet glorified in the Old Testament, it was impossible for Him to send the Holy Spirit or for the Holy Spirit to indwell believers because the indwelling ministry of the Holy Spirit is to glorify Christ.

In the Old Testament fallen angels had a lot to do with hindering the communication of divine truth, and the elect angels had a lot to do with the communication of divine truth. That is why only Moses and Aaron was all that was needed. Why? Because there were a lot of angels communicating also.

Literally, “For if the word (Bible doctrine)

Spoken - λαληθεῖς - LALETHEIS. First aorist passive participle nominative masculine singular of the verb λαλέω - LALEO. Means “to speak, to talk with, to make an announcement, to make a declaration, to address or to preach.”

AORIST TENSE (constative) views the action in its entirety in one point of time. This tense takes all of the points of time when the angels communicated and places them in one point of time in describing it.

PASSIVE VOICE: the subject receives the action of the verb. The Word of God received communication to human beings by the angels .

PARTICIPLE (circumstantial) which denotes the attendant circumstances involved in the completing of the action of the verb. The circumstances involved all of the opposition from fallen angels as well as the power of God in seeing that His Word is communicated.

Literally, “For if the Word (Bible doctrine) having been communicated.”

by angels - δι’ ἁγγέλων - DI AGGELON. First of all we have the preposition DIA, plus the genitive masculine plural of ἄγγελος - AGGELOS. Means “messenger, angel.” This could be translated “by means of angels,” or “Through the agency of angels.” In other words, the angels were the channels by which God communicated His Word to the Old Testament Jews.

Literally, “For if the Word (Bible doctrine) having been been communicated through angels.”

Was stedfast -

Was - ἐγένετο - EGENETO. Second aorist active indicative third person singular of γίνομαι - GINOMAI. Means “to become.” This refers to “becoming something that was not in existence before.”

AORIST TENSE (constative) views the action of the verb in its entirety in one point of time. This covers the entire realm of angelic communication in the Old Testament.

Stedfast - βέβαιος – BEBAIOS. Nominative singular of βέβαιος – BEBAIOS. Means “sure, firm, certain, dependable and reliable, permanent.” Not only did angels teach these things, but human writers eventually recorded them. In everything that human writers recorded in the Old Testament, angels were involved. Angels were the teachers of the prophets, they were the teachers of Moses and they also taught the Jewish people.

Literally, “For if the Word (Bible doctrine) that was communicated through the agency of angels became permanent (and it did).”

That is only the first part of the protasis (supposition). There is a second part which is necessary to make the illustration. The second part of the protasis has to do with the fact that when there was a violation of the law there was punishment. The law was communicated by angels, and even though it was, when it was violated or broken by human beings there was definite punishment.

And every transgression and disobedience received a just recompense of reward -

And every transgression - καὶ πᾶσα παράβασις – KAI PASA PARABASIS. First of all we have the continuative used of the conjunction KAI correctly translated “and.” Next we have the nominative singular of the adjective πᾶς – PAS meaning “all, every, the whole.” It is correctly translated “every.” Then we have the nominative singular of the noun παράβασις – PARABASIS. The word originally meant “stepping to the side of.” It later came to mean “deviation, transgression or violation of the law.”

Literally, “And every transgression or violation of the law.”

And disobedience - καὶ παρακοή – KAI PARAKOE. First of all we have the continuative use of the conjunction KAI, plus the nominative singular of the noun παρακοή – PARAKOE. Means “refusal to hear and learn the Word of God.” In that sense it means “disobedience.” PARAKOE comes from PARAKOUO, which means “a refusal to hear and learn, to neglect listening and learning, to disregard what is heard.”

Literally, “And every violation of the law, and every act of unwillingness to listen and learn.”

The disobedience brought out here refers to negative volition toward the Word of God. The “unwillingness to hear and learn from the teaching of the Word of God.”

Therefore, this phrase teaches two types of violations:

1. The direct violation of the law, or a deviation from it.
2. The indirect violation of the law, called “unwillingness to hear and learn.”

That is one reason why individuals in the Old Testament could not gain favor with God by just obeying the overt commands of the law. The law required the hearers to learn as well as obey the overt commands.

Literally, “And every violation of the law, and every act of unwillingness to listen and learn.”

Received a just recompense of reward -

Received - ἔλαβεν – ELABEN. Second aorist active indicative third person singular of the verb λαμβάνω – LAMBANO. Means “to take to one’s self, to receive.” Here in our text it refers to “receiving exactly what one deserves.”

AORIST TENSE, denotes the point of time in the past when this was received.

ACTIVE VOICE: the subject produced the action of the verb by his “violation and disobedience” toward the Mosaic Law.

INDICATIVE MOOD: denotes the absolute dogmatic fact, that when believers actively make a choice not to listen and learn from the Word of God they will, without a doubt receive a “just recompense of reward.”

PRINCIPLE: simply disobeying the overt commands of the Word of God is not the only reason believers suffer. This verse tells us that believers who simply refuse to “listen and learn” from the teaching of the Word of God will suffer. This type of suffering is divine discipline; this is not to be confused with suffering for blessing. We can’t tell them apart, but God can. This is why we are instructed not to judge.

We need to keep in mind that this phrase is dealing with the Old Testament only. But the writer is going to use this illustration to challenge New Testament believers.

Literally, “And every violation of the law, and every act of unwillingness to listen and to learn received.”

A just recompense - This is a very bad translation.

A just - ἔνδικον – ENDIKON. Accusative singular of ἔνδικος – ENDIKOS. The prefixed proposition EN meaning “in,” plus DIKE meaning “fair and just.” Literally, “in fairness, or in justice.” This refers to that which is based on what is right, just and deserved.

Recompense of reward - μισθαποδοσίαν – MISTHAPODOSIAN. Accusative singular of the triple compound noun μισθαποδοσία – MISTHAPODOSIA. Means “the discharge of wages or punishment.”

MISTHOS means “wages.”

APO means “from.”

DIDOMI means “to receive.”

MISTHAPODOSIA originally meant, “to receive back wages.” But it came to be used in an unfavorable sense of “receiving punishment.”

Literally, “received a just punishment.”

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 2: “For if the Word (Bible doctrine) having been communicated through angels became permanent (and it did), and every violation of the law and every act of unwillingness to listen and learn received a just punishment (and it did).”

Summary

1. The Mosaic Law was canceled. Romans 5:20, “.....**the law entered, that the offense might abound.....**” (KJV) The Greek word translated “**entered**” is the second aorist active indicative of the verb παρεισέρχομαι – PAREISERCHOMAI meaning “to steal in, to slip in, to come in with an issue.” But the definition is not really the issue here. This issue is how this word was used in ancient Greek writings. PAREISERCHOMAI was used in Greek drama. It referred to an actor who had a minor part to play. He would come out on the stage and say his line and then leave, never again to return to the stage.

It is not by accident that God the Holy Spirit told Paul to use this word with reference to the Mosaic Law. The Law was like a minor actor in the play of life. He came out on the stage of life, played his minor part and then left, never again to return.

2. The Mosaic Law was brought to the human race through the mediation of angels. Therefore, the canceling of the Law freed man, not only from the Law, but from the subordination to the angels who brought it. Man’s subordination to angels was inconsistent with his ultimate destiny to sovereignly rule over all creation.

3. The victory of Jesus Christ in the Angelic Conflict (His resurrection, ascension and session) becomes the focal point in convincing the Jews in 67 AD to accept Jesus Christ as their personal Savior. Because Jesus Christ, is now higher and greater than angels in His humanity.
4. Because of the resurrection, ascension and session of Jesus Christ, He is superior to all angels in all ways. This is the means of impressing upon the Jews the importance of getting away from the shadows and rituals. The shadows and rituals are no longer bona fide. Simply believing in Jesus Christ and learning His Word has replaced all of the shadows and the rituals of all religions. Because believing in Jesus Christ and learning His Word is the reality.
5. The angels administered shadows and rituals but in this phase of the Angelic Conflict during the Church Age the angels have become second class citizens of heaven, and have become the servants of mankind. Jesus Christ as a man is in a resurrection body and is seated at the right hand of God the Father. He is superior to all angels. Someday we too will have a resurrection body just like our Lord's and we will become superior to angels physically.

But in the meantime we have something that no believer ever had before the Church Age began. We are in union with Jesus Christ as He is seated at the right hand of God. Everytime a person believes in Jesus Christ in the Church Age he is entered into union with Christ. No Jew in the previous dispensation was in union with Christ. The mechanics of this union is called the Baptism of the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit takes everyone at the moment of salvation and enters him into union with Jesus Christ. Why didn't the Holy Spirit do that in the Old Testament? Because Christ had not yet been glorified. John 7:39, **By this he meant the Spirit, whom those who believed in him were later to receive. Up to that time the Spirit had not been given, since Jesus had not yet been glorified.** (NIV)

Not only could the Holy Spirit not indwell believers in the Old Testament, but the Holy Spirit could not place believers in union with Christ either. It is the Holy Spirit's job to glorify Jesus Christ, but if He is not seated at the right hand of the Father as a human being He is not glorified. Therefore, it would have been impossible to place a believer in union with someone who isn't at the right hand of God the Father, and who isn't even human himself before the incarnation.

PRINCIPLE: the Old Testament saints were not a part of the body of Christ. They are part of the family of God, but after Jesus had been seated at the right hand of the Father after His resurrection, all those who believe in Him are now members of the royal family of God. In that status they receive many more things at the point of salvation because of the completed work of Jesus Christ in His death, burial, resurrection, ascension and session to the right hand of the Father. This was explained in volume I of Word Studies in the Epistle to the Hebrews, page 122 under the Doctrine of the Ascension and Session.

ILLUSTRATION: when I was in the military I was a member of the Headquarters Detachment of the 210th MP BN. Even though I was in the military I was not allowed to go to any other military unit to serve. I was assigned to the HHD 210th MP BN. I could not walk over to the Headquarters detachment of the 2nd BN 182nd Field Artillery and demand to see the company commander. It didn't matter that I was in the same army and wore the same uniform. I was in a different unit. I was assigned to the HHD 210th MP BN, therefore, I had no rights and no privileges in the 182nd Field Artillery BN.

The same concept is true in the spiritual realm. The Old Testament believers and the New Testament believers are all members of the same army, but in this army of God, we are assigned to different units. The Old Testament units do not have the rights and privileges of the New Testament units. We all have the same commander, but we operate under different protocol.

In my assignment to the HHD of the 210th MP BN I worked continually in the company of high ranking officers, even though I was only a staff sergeant. By analogy, Church Age believers are members of the body of Jesus Christ, the Son of God. Our position in Christ has placed us at the right hand of God the Father. We have been given something far superior to believers in other dispensations.

Many of these concepts are true in the spiritual realm. The Old Testament believers are friends of the bride (the New Testament believers). The New Testament believers are the bride of Christ and have an intimate relationship with God through Jesus Christ that the Old Testament believers did not have. The only reason that New Testament believers have this intimate relationship with God through Jesus Christ is because of His completed work, which involved His unique death in bearing all of the sins of the people of the world, His resurrection, ascension and session to the right hand of God the Father.

Therefore, today in the Church Age when anyone believes in Jesus Christ as his personal Savior the Holy Spirit not only takes up permanent residence in the body of the believer, but He also places that believer in union with Jesus Christ who is seated at the right hand of God the Father. Today believers in Jesus Christ are far superior to all angels because they are all in Christ. They are superior to angels because they are in union with Christ, not because of anything they do or don't do. Neither does their position in Christ have anything to do with lifestyle, whether it is good or bad. They are permanently united with Christ and permanently indwelt with the Holy Spirit because of their faith in the finished work of Jesus Christ on the cross. It should be noted here that the angels are not impressed with anything believers do or avoid doing. They are not impressed with any human talent. But the angels are impressed with Jesus Christ and the believer's position in Him.

I hope you can see how important it is to understand these basic concepts of our position in Christ. Because of that, angels are our slaves and they enjoy being slaves. Not because they like us, or because they are impressed with us, but because we are members of the body of Christ. We are members of the royal family of God, we will become the bride of Christ at the Rapture and resurrection of the Church. We will also rule and reign with Christ forever. Therefore the angels have an awesome respect for Jesus Christ and all that He has accomplished.

6. In our position in Christ we are higher than angels, and that is the main reason why angels can no longer teach mankind. It would be comparable to having a child teach a college class. All believers in Christ are superior to angels. Therefore, inferior angels are not allowed to teach superior human beings who are in Christ. Angels can only be slaves to men. No angel can ever teach us anything. Why? Because in our position we are in union with Christ and superior to all angels. One day in the future after the resurrection of all Church Age believers we will be physically superior to angels. But until the resurrection we are only superior in our position in Christ.

God's plan is a perfect plan and a unique plan. God's plan is so perfect that even if a believer spends his entire life in negative volition toward the Word and plan of God, and even if he dies under maximum discipline by the sin unto death, he will always be greater than all the angels and even Satan himself. Not because of anything the believer does or doesn't do, but because of his union with Christ. That is grace. What is

grace? A simple acronym best describes the meaning of grace.

G—God’s

R—riches

A—at

C—Christ’s

E—expense.

7. In 67 AD the unbelieving Jews in Jerusalem were drifting past the port of eternal life. Salvation was administered by Jesus Christ, the Son of David, who is our High Priest forever. But these Jews were missing it. The salvation work of Jesus Christ is the reality, but they didn’t see it because they were so enmeshed in the shadows and rituals of the temple. The sacrifices and rituals of the temple were apostate at that time.
8. The Jews were involved with the shadows and rituals while the reality was being presented to them.
9. The angels administered shadow and ritual doctrine, but Jesus Christ administers substance doctrine or reality doctrine.
10. If there was punishment for the violation of the Mosaic Law, and if that punishment was fair, and the Law was only a shadow, just imagine how much more severe the punishment for the rejection of Jesus as Savior, who is the reality.
11. Punishment is always related to light. The more light (truth) we have the more severe our punishment if we refuse it. Jesus was very clear about this point. Matt 11:20-24, **Then Jesus began to denounce the cities in which most of his miracles had been performed, because they did not repent** (μετανοέω – METANOEO means “to change the mind.” Plus the negative OU means “that they did not change their minds”). (21) **“Woe to you , Korazim! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the miracles that were performed in you had been performed in Tyre and Sidon, they would have repented** (changed their minds) **long ago in sackcloth and ashes. (22) But I tell you it will be more bearable for Tyre and Sidon on the day of judgment than for you. (23) And you, Capernaum, will you be lifted up to the skies? No, you will go down to the depths. If the miracles that were performed in you were performed in Sodom, it would have remained to this day. (24) But I tell you that it will be more bearable for Sodom on the day of judgment than for you.”** (NIV) (Explanations provided by the author)

Mark 12:38-40, **As he taught, Jesus said, “Watch out for the teachers of the law. They like to walk around in flowing robes and be greeted in the marketplaces, (39) and have the most important seats in the synagogues and the places of honor at banquets. (40) They devour widows’ houses and for a show make lengthy prayers. Such men will be punished most severely.”** (NIV)

Hell and the lake of fire are very real places. In the New Testament they are described as places of **“eternal fire”** (Matt 25:41). It is **“where the worm does not die and the fire is not quenched”** (Mark 9:48). It is called **“the fiery lake of burning sulfur”** (Rev 19:20). It is called **“the bottomless pit”** or **“the Abyss”** (Rev 9:11, 11:7). It is **“the place of outer darkness where there is continual weeping and gnashing of teeth”** (Matt 22:13). It is also called **“a blackest darkness”** (Jude 13).

There are degrees of punishment in the eternal lake of fire. Not necessarily in hell, but in the lake of fire. The hottest places belong to those who have rejected the most light, or the most truth. Jesus said in Luke 12:47-48, **“The servant who knows his master’s will and does not get ready or does not do what his master wants will be beaten with many blows. (48) But the one who does not know and does things deserving punishment will be beaten with few blows.”** (NIV) The Lord is talking about judgment and punishment, and His point is very simple: the greater the light, or the more truth you are exposed to, the greater the accountability.

The age in which we are now living is the most enlightened age of all human history. Never before has God made so much known to the human race. If you are reading this, you will be held much more accountable than those who do not read or listen to the Word of God being taught. Luke 12:48b, **.....From everyone who has been given much, much will be demanded; and from the one who has been entrusted with much, much more will be asked.** (NIV)

PRINCIPLE: any one who rejects the salvation that is in Jesus Christ in this age will suffer in a hotter spot in the lake of fire than a person who rejected God’s salvation in a previous age.

PRINCIPLE: any believer in this age who rejects, or is apathetic to the teachings of the Word of God and fails to apply them to his life, will receive a greater discipline in time, and a greater loss of reward in eternity.

Why is this true? Because in this age God has given to us His completed Word in written form in which all of us can read and learn or be taught. He has also given us pastor-teachers who possess a special gift to communicate that Word, and He has also given us the Holy Spirit who causes us to understand the things that are taught from the Word of God.

The writer of the book of Hebrews will amplify all this in Heb 10:28-29, **Anyone who rejected the law of Moses died without mercy on the testimony of two or three witnesses. (29) How much more severely do you think a man deserves to be punished who has trampled the Son of God under foot, who has treated as an unholy thing the blood of the covenant that sanctified him, and who has insulted the Spirit of grace?** (NIV) Here the writer is referring to those individuals who had accepted the gospel teaching of faith in Jesus Christ, accepted the grace plan of salvation, then they went back to the temple and offered animal sacrifices which were shadows of Jesus Christ. In other words, after being saved by grace through faith in Jesus Christ, after accepting the reality, they went back to the shadows and rituals. This was an insult to God and to His perfect plan.

Therefore I encourage you not to neglect or reject the teachings of the Word of God. It is very common for many believers to neglect rather than reject the Word of God. But either neglect or rejection will bring disaster for you. You will suffer great divine discipline from the hand of God whether you reject or simply neglect the teachings of the Word of God.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 2: “For if the Word (Bible doctrine) having been communicated through angels became permanent (and it did), and every violation of the law and every act of unwillingness to listen and learn received a just punishment (and it did).”

Hebrews 2:3;

Vs 3: How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation; which at the first began to be spoken by the Lord, and was confirmed unto us by them that heard him; (KJV)

Verse three gives us the apodosis or the conclusion of the conditional clause that began at the beginning of verse two. There are four conditional clauses in the Greek. Each one usually begins with the English word “if.”

The first class conditional clause introduces a true statement.

The second class conditional clause introduces a false statement.

The third class conditional clause introduces a possibility. It could be true or it could be false.

The fourth class conditional clause emphasizes the desire on the part of the writer that is not taking place.

All conditional clauses are composed of two parts: the protasis, and the apodosis. The protasis is known as the “if” clause. It sets forth a supposition that is contingent upon the following condition or statement, which is found in the second clause known as the apodosis. The apodosis is a clause or phrase in a conditional sentence that sets up the conclusion or result from the conditional factors stated in the protasis.

Verse three gives us the apodosis or the conclusion of the conditional supposition given in the previous verse.

In other words, “If the word of God that was communicated through the angels in the past became permanent, and every one who violated it, or even failed to listen to it and learn it received a fair and just punishment,” then “How shall we escape (we in the Church Age who have been given so much more than the believers in the Jewish Age), if we neglect so great salvation.”

How - πῶς – POS. Interrogative adverb used to introduce a rhetorical question and should be translated “by what means?” or “How is it possible?” When there is a rhetorical question used with an interrogative adverb rather than an interrogative pronoun, the rhetorical question expresses a denial. In other words, there would be no escape if God’s salvation in Jesus Christ was neglected.

Shall we escape -

We - ἡμεῖς - HEMEIS. Nominative plural of the pronoun ἐγώ - EGO. This is in the emphatic position in the Greek. It refers to the first century readers of this epistle, the Jews in Jerusalem in 67 AD.

Shall escape - ἐκφευξόμεθα - EKPHEUXOMETHA. Future middle indicative first person plural of the verb ἐκφεύγω - EKPHEUGO. Means “to flee out from, to make a clean escape, to get away completely.” PHEUGO means “to escape.” EK means “out from or away from.” Therefore EKPHEUGO means “to escape out and away from.”

FUTURE TENSE: refers to both the fall of Jerusalem in time and the lake of fire in the future. It was possible to believe in Jesus Christ in 67 AD and not only receive eternal salvation immediately and be delivered from one of the greatest catastrophes in human history, but also escape the lake of fire, and the horrible second death at the Great White Throne Judgment. It is believed that many of the individuals who believed in Jesus Christ at this time in history followed our Lord’s warning in Luke 21:20-24 and left Jerusalem before the disaster struck.

MIDDLE VOICE (reflexive). This tells us that every individual had to make the decision to believe for himself. No one could do it for him

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative). Since this is a rhetorical question the indicative mood expresses an absolute reality of denial. Which in essence says, “There is no escape from either the catastrophe of the destruction of Jerusalem by the Romans in 70 AD, or the catastrophe of the lake of fire apart from Jesus Christ. There are two catastrophes referred to here: one temporal and one eternal.

Literally, “How shall we escape.”

If we neglect - Not correct. Many translators take a participle and translated it like a conditional clause, but there is no conditional clause here.

If - Not in the Greek text.

We neglect - ἀμελήσαντες - AMELESANTES. First aorist active participle nominative masculine plural of ἀμελέω - AMELEO. Means “to be unconcerned with, to disregard, to neglect.”

A very dangerous situation is brought out here. The writer is not talking about individuals who are willingly rejecting the truths of God's Word, but those who are "neglecting them," or are "simply unconcerned," or are "simply disregarding them." Over the years I have talked to many unbelievers who told me that the gospel I gave them was true, they understood it and that probably some day they would accept it. Many of those individuals died before accepting Christ as Savior simply because they neglected or were unconcerned at the moment.

I have also spoken to many Christians over the years about the importance of learning Bible doctrine. Many of them expressed to me their understanding of the importance of God's Word for their lives, but again, because of neglect or simple unconcern at the moment they never took the time to place themselves under the consistent learning of the Word of God. There will be many Christians in heaven who have forfeited all of their special blessings and special rewards from the Lord because they neglected or were unconcerned about spiritual truth from the Word of God.

Literally, "Having disregarded."

So great salvation -

So great - τηλικαύτης - TELIKAUTES. The common Greek word for "great" is μέγας - MEGAS. But the writer of Hebrews being led by the Holy Spirit uses the ablative singular of the demonstrative pronoun τηλικούτος - TELIKOUTOS meaning "so great, so large, so important, so mighty." But these simple definitions do not give us all that is expressed here. The ablative case has the same morphology as the genitive case in the Greek. However, it has a little different meaning. It carries the concept of source. The ablative case connotes both source and separation. Here in our passage we have the ablative of comparison, telling us that there is nothing that can be compared to the salvation plan designed by God. This is very difficult to bring over in English. I will translate it "such a great."

Here in verse three we have a rhetorical question followed by an ablative of comparison which says in effect, "Look, you have something that is greater than anything anyone else has ever had or ever could have. You have something that is absolutely and totally fantastic. There is nothing that can ever be compared with it. There has never been anything like it before the cross, and there never will be anything like it after the Rapture. And that isn't all, while this 'so great' salvation is eternal life, it is also the beginning of something that is 'so great' in time. The potential exists for a spiritual life with blessings that far surpasses everything God gave anyone in the Old

Testament. But that life can only be realized if, after believing in Jesus Christ, you saturate your souls with the knowledge of the Word of God and progress to spiritual maturity.

To see this comparison you need to compare the salvation package of Old Testament believers with the salvation package of the believers in the Church Age.

At the point of salvation the Old Testament believers received the following:

1. God's perfect righteousness.
2. God's eternal life.
3. God's work of creating a human spirit for each believer.

At the point of salvation in the Church Age believers receive the following:

1. God's perfect righteousness: II Corinthians 5:21.
2. God's eternal life: John 3:16.
3. God the Holy Spirit creates a human spirit for each believer: John 1:13; John 3:3; Titus 3:5.
4. God gives every believer the Holy Spirit to permanently indwell his body: Romans 8:11; 8:14;
5. God has made it possible to be constantly controlled by the Holy Spirit by our regular confession or acknowledgment of personal sins: I John 1:9.
6. God the Holy Spirit places each believer in union with Jesus Christ, known as positional sanctification: Romans 6:3.
7. God the Holy Spirit makes every believer a citizen of heaven: Philippians 3:20.
8. God the Holy Spirit makes every believer His own child. That is why we are called children of God. John 1:12.
9. God the Holy Spirit makes every believer a priest: I Peter 2:5, 2:9.
10. God the Holy Spirit gives every believer a special gift: I Corinthians 12:4-11.
11. God the Holy Spirit has made every believer a joint heir with Jesus Christ in everything: Romans 8:17.
12. God has given all believers in the Church Age a position that is higher than angels: I Corinthians 6:3; Ephesians 3:10; Hebrews chapter one.

This is by no means exhaustive, but it will give you a better idea what we have today as believers in the Church Age when compared with believers in the Old Testament. And when the Tribulation period arrives on the scene of history all those who believe in Jesus Christ at that time only receive what the Old Testament believers received. The same is also true for those who believe in Christ during the Millennial kingdom. In the age we are living right

now, the Church Age, God is doing more for believers than He ever has done before and more than He will ever do in future ages.

Today the majority of Christians all over the world are missing out on some of the greatest blessings that God has ever granted to any group of human beings. They lack an understanding of what God has actually given to them and has made available to them through the unique spiritual life of the Church Age.

I hope that you can grasp the importance of this information. With your faith in Jesus Christ you are in possession of the “the greatest thing” that you could ever possess: “your so great salvation.” The salvation package that God designed for the Church Age is almost beyond description, and the blessings and opportunities given to all those who accept Jesus Christ are without comparison to anything given in other ages.

Literally, “How shall we escape having disregarded so great salvation.”

Salvation - σωτηρία - SOTERIAS. Ablative singular of σωτηρία - SOTERIA. Means “salvation, deliverance.” With the ablative of comparison of τηλικούτος - TELIKOUTOS, we now have the ablative case of SOTERIA.

Literally, “So great a salvation.”

Why is the writer using the ablative case? Why does he use a rhetorical question? Followed by an ablative of comparison? Because this is an appeal to Jewish unbelievers in Jerusalem in 67 AD. But Jewish believers are reading this also, and, they are not following the Christian life because they are involved in the rituals and the shadows of temple worship. They have failed to realize what is really important in the Christian life. They didn't understand the Christian life, just as many Christians don't today.

As a Christian you should realize that there is only one important thing for you to do as a Christian in this life, and that is to learn the Word of God. It is not to witness, it is not to give money, it is not to win souls, it is not to teach Sunday school and it is not to help the poor. The only thing you should be concerned with is the learning of a little Bible doctrine every day. When you saturate your soul with Biblical knowledge you will be a witness for the Lord, but on His terms. When you saturate your soul with Biblical knowledge, you will want to give money to help support the ministry as you keep growing spiritually. When you saturate your soul with Biblical knowledge, you will witness to unbelievers about your faith. It will be as natural to you as breathing. When you saturate your soul with Biblical knowledge, you will want

to help others as God gives you the time and the means to do so. Therefore, the most important thing in your life as a Christian is the learning of Bible doctrine. II Timothy 2:15 says, **STUDY to show yourself approved to God.....** (KJV) (Emphasis added by the author) II Peter 3:18, **But grow in the grace, and in the KNOWLEDGE of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ. To him be glory both now and for ever. Amen.** (KJV) (Emphasis added by the author) You can never learn enough of the Word of God.

By using the ablative of comparison, we learn that the work of Jesus Christ was unique. There is nothing that can be compared with it. The work of Christ that provided our “so great salvation” was given to us while we were still sinners and enemies of God (Rom 5:8). And since it was God who provided our salvation through Christ there isn’t anything anyone can do to obtain it except believe, to place your faith in Jesus Christ and in Him alone. Everything that was needed to be done was done by God. Man can do nothing to merit or deserve the salvation that God offers in Christ. Titus 3:5a, **He saved us, not because of righteous things we had done, but because of his mercy.** (NIV)

The age we are currently living in is without equal. There is no room today for angels to do any teaching concerning the fantastic grace plan of God. There was nothing wrong with what they taught in the Old Testament, but there is something much better today, and that is what the writer of Hebrews is going to tell his readers in Jerusalem. The writer told his readers in Hebrews chapter one that Jesus is better than the angels (Heb 1:4). He will continue with that message in Heb 6:9 when He says that God has provided better things. Then in Heb 7:7 he will say that we have better blessings, We have a better hope (Heb 7:19), we have a better covenant (Heb 7:22), we have a better mediator (Heb 8:6), we have a better sacrifice (Heb 9:23), We have better possessions (Heb 10:34), we have a better country (Heb 11:16), we have a better resurrection (Heb 11:35), there is a better plan for us (Heb 11:40) and we have a better word (Heb 12:24). (taken from Word Studies in the Epistle to the Hebrews, Volume One page 31 by Robert H. Kreger)

Therefore today we have something far greater than Moses or any other Old Testament believer ever had. We are living in the wonderful age of the royal family of God and the intensification of the grace plan of God.

Literally, “By what means shall we escape having disregarded so great a salvation.” Or “How is it possible for us to escape having disregarded such a great salvation.”

Which at the first began to be spoken by the Lord -

Which - ἥτις – HETIS. Nominative singular of the relative pronoun ὅστις – HOSTIS. This pronoun is used qualitatively meaning “which kind.” This refers to the “so great a salvation” previously mentioned.

Literally, “Which kind of salvation.”

At the first - ἀρχὴν – ARCHEN. Accusative singular of the noun ἀρχή – ARCHE. This means a beginning, first place, headship, authority, prince.”

Began - λαβοῦσα – LABOUSA. Second aorist active participle nominative feminine singular of the verb λαμβάνω – LAMBANO. Means “to take, to receive.”

Literally, “Which having received a beginning.”

To be spoken - λαλεῖσθαι – LALEISTHAI. Present middle infinitive of the verb λαλέω – LALEO. Means “to speak, to talk, to converse.” LALEO means “to communicate in a conversational manner.” This is the same word that is used in verse two for angelic communication of the Word of God. Now LALEO is used in the present middle infinitive for Jesus Christ communicating the Word of God before He went to the cross. Why? Because Jesus Christ as the last Adam taught Bible doctrine in His perfect humanity (impeccability) before He possessed a resurrection body.

LALEO is used here to indicate that Jesus Christ communicated something as a man before he went to the cross, before the resurrection, before the ascension and session that no angel ever had the privilege of communicating. The angels communicated shadows, but Jesus communicated substance and reality.

PRESENT TENSE (dramatic) this speaks of a dramatic moment in the present time when Jesus Christ began His earthly ministry of teaching substance and reality. He was teaching something the angels knew nothing about. That was a very dramatic moment in time, not only in the history of the Angelic Conflict, but in the history of the world.

ACTIVE VOICE: the subject produces the action of the verb. Jesus Christ produced the action of communicating this very important dramatic information.

INFINITIVE MOOD: mood of purpose. It was God's purpose that man should take over the communicating of the message of reality. Therefore, Jesus Christ as the last Adam was the first man to do so. This concept would be continued in the Church Age which began 50 days after His resurrection on the day of Pentecost (Acts chapter two).

Literally, "Which having received a beginning and was communicated."

By the Lord - διὰ τοῦ κυρίου - DIA TOU KURIΟΥ. First of all we have the preposition DIA, plus the genitive masculine singular of κύριος - KURIOS meaning "Lord, with reference to deity." It should be translated "through the Lord." This is the same construction that we saw in the previous verse "Through the angels." In this verse we have "through the Lord."

And was confirmed - ἐβεβαιώθη - EBEBAIOTHE. Aorist passive indicative third person singular of the verb βεβαιόω - BEBAIOO. Means "to establish, to verify, to ratify, to strengthen and make firm." In this context it means "to verify."

AORIST TENSE: a simple point of time in the past, "was verified."

PASSIVE VOICE: the subject receives the action of the verb. The confirmation received verification.

INDICATIVE MOOD: refers to the absolute historical reality of such verification.

Unto us - εἰς ἡμᾶς - EIS HUMAS. First of all we have the preposition EIS, plus the accusative plural of the pronoun ἐγώ - EGO translated "us." The preposition EIS is a directional preposition meaning "to, toward or unto." Jesus Christ placed this in our direction and started something different. He started something that has never stopped and continues to go forward today.

Jesus Christ communicated to the apostles, the apostles communicated to the church, and the church with its communication gifts given to certain men communicate to the people of the world. The Word of God has been communicated to the human race ever since. An unbroken chain of communication from 30 AD to this very day. Almost 2,000 years in every generation there has been the unbroken communication of the Word of God.

Not only do we have the miracle of the preservation of the Word of God, but we have another miracle. In every generation the Word of God will be

communicated to a lost and dying world. That is the grace provision of God. That is something that no man could ever accomplish. No human being could ever start something whereby there would be an unbroken line of communication for almost 2,000 years. Only God can do something like that, and He did.

Literally, “How shall we escape having disregarded so great salvation, which having received a beginning and was communicated through the Lord and was verified.”

By them that heard him -

Him - Not in the Greek text.

By them that heard - ὑπὸ τῶν ἀκουσάντων - HUPO TON AKOUSANTON. First of all we have the preposition ὑπὸ - HUPO meaning “under, in the sense of authority or influence.” Plus the definite article TON, plus the aorist active participle genitive masculine plural of the verb ἀκούω - AKOUO. Means “to hear, to listen, to take heed, to obey, to recognize authority.”

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 3: “By what means shall we escape after having disregarded such a great salvation, which was at first communicated through the Lord (in contrast to angels), and was verified under the authoritative teaching of those having heard.”

“Those having heard” refers to the apostles who heard this from the Lord and perpetuated it.

S U M M A R Y

1. “Those having heard” refers to the apostles.
2. This passage infers that there was one generation between the writer of Hebrews and the Lord Jesus Christ. The writer places himself in the second generation. Jesus Christ started it, the apostles were the next to carry it on and taught with authority, and the writer of this epistle says that he is one who heard it from the apostles. He is the next generation.
3. Therefore, the unknown writer of the Epistle to the Hebrews could not be Paul because he received his message direct from the Lord. (Galatians 1:11)
4. The unknown writer of the Epistle to the Hebrews received his message from the apostles, who received it from the Lord.

In assembling verses 2 & 3 together we need to keep in mind that verse two contains the protasis of a first class conditional clause, and verse three the apodosis or the result clause.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 2: “For if the Word (Bible doctrine) having been communicated through angels became permanent (and it did), and every violation of the law and every act of unwillingness to listen and learn received a just punishment (and it did).”

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 3: “By what means shall we escape after having disregarded such a great salvation, which was at first communicated through the Lord (in contrast to angels), and was verified under the authoritative teaching of those (apostles) having heard.”

Hebrews 2:4;

Vs 4: God also bearing them witness, both with signs and wonders, and with divers miracles, and gifts of the Holy Ghost, according to his own will? (KJV)

This verse gives a grace warning to the Jews as they faced national disaster.

There is an important principle here: because when Bible doctrine is neglected by a nation who has a doctrinal heritage (the Jews in our passage), and because Bible doctrine was neglected, the laws of divine establishment were neglected, and when the two of them were neglected there will be first of all a loss of freedom within that nation, and second, there will come a loss of freedom through outside conquest.

The Jews had a great spiritual heritage of Bible doctrine. They also had a great heritage of the laws of divine establishment. As a nation they had been blessed by God as few nations have ever been blessed. And yet there came a generation who had maximum negative volition toward Bible doctrine among believers, and therefore divine blessing was withheld. With the rejection of the laws of divine establishment there came confusion. When the laws of divine establishment are rejected the first things to go are the structure of the family which binds a nation together, and law and order. Crime and violence will continue to increase at alarming rates. If the laws of divine establishment continue to be neglected the nation will decline economically, socially and academically. This is what happened to the Jews in Jerusalem in 67 AD, and what is happening to the United States of America at this time.

But before divine catastrophe overtakes a nation God always gives warnings. He gave the Jews warnings, and He does the same thing today. Some of the extreme weather patterns we have seen are warnings from God. Maybe the world wide economic problems are warnings from God. Perhaps the rise of terrorism is a warning from God. All of these are only possibilities, but it should be enough for all of us to take heed and evaluate our own individual lifestyles.

The warning God gave the Jews is given in verse four of our passage.

God also bearing them witness -

God - τοῦ θεοῦ – TOU THEOU. Genitive singular of θεός – THEOS, plus the definite article which is used to identify the noun. This refers to God the

Father, the author of the divine plan of grace. This is a genitive absolute, which means that it stands alone separated from the rest of the sentence. This is one of the ways the Greeks used to amplify and emphasize something important. Here it is used to amplify and emphasize the importance of God the Father also in witnessing and confirming the ministry of the Lord Jesus Christ and the apostles as spoken of in the previous verse.

Also - Not in the Greek text.

Bearing them witness- συνεπιμαρτυροῦντο – SUNEPI MARTUROUNTOS. Present active participle genitive masculine singular from the triple compound verb συνεπιμαρτυρέω – SUNEPI MARTUREO.

SUN = preposition meaning “with.”

EPI = preposition meaning “in addition to.”

MARTUREO = meaning “to testify in court, to be a witness.”

Therefore, SUNEPI MARTUREO means “to jointly testify, to testify at the same time, to confirm by additional testimony.”

Literally, “God confirming by additional testimony.”

When the genitive absolute is brought in, it could be translated “God confirming their witness by additional testimony.”

Both with signs and wonders -

Both - τε – TE. An enclitic particle used as a link between two things.

With signs - σημείοις – SEMEIOIS. Dative instrumental plural of the noun σημεῖον – SEMEION. Means “miracles, proof, convincing token, remarkable event.” The instrumental case should be translated “by means of miracles.”

SEMEION basically refers to the miracles performed by our Lord, and the apostles who followed Him, and that is what most of the commentaries describe when they analyze this verse. But it also has a very intense meaning and a far reaching purpose. SEMEION, as used here does not just refer to ordinary miracles, it refers to “a remarkable event,” or “a great phenomenon” to warn a nation. It is not used here only for the wonderful miracles performed by a small group of people, but also for God’s warning to Jews of the coming catastrophe in Jerusalem.

We should not rule out the wonderful miracles performed by the followers of our Lord in the first century with the use of many temporary spiritual gifts. You can read about them in the gospels and in the book of Acts. But that is not the only message being given here in Hebrews 2:4.

There were three specific “signs” or warnings given to the Jews instructing them of the great disaster that would overtake them in 70 AD. The three specific warnings are: 1) The virgin birth of the Jewish Messiah prophesied in Isaiah 7:14, 2) The two deaths of Jesus Christ on the cross prophesied in Isaiah 53:9, 3) the gift of tongues prophesied in Isaiah 28:11.

1. The virgin birth of the Jewish Messiah. Isaiah 7:14, **Therefore the Lord himself will give a sign: The virgin will be with child and will give birth to a son, and will call him Immanuel.** (NIV) This is a prophecy of the virgin birth of Jesus Christ, and it is said to be “a sign.” It was a sign to the Jews who rebelled against the Lord. The word used for “**sign**” in the Septuagint translation into Greek of Isaiah 7:14 is the same word that is found in Hebrews 2:4, SEMEION meaning “a remarkable event, a miracle.”

There was only one time in all of human history when anyone came into the world through a virgin birth. Only one individual never had a human father, and that was Jesus Christ. The virgin birth made it possible for Jesus Christ to come into the world without a sin nature and without the imputation of Adam’s sin.

2. The two deaths of Jesus Christ on the cross prophesied in Isaiah 53:9, Isaiah 51:1, **Who has believed our message and to whom has the arm of the Lord been revealed?** (NIV) The arm of the Lord is Jesus Christ. He is currently seated on the right hand side of God the Father. He is called “God’s right hand” in a number of passages.

Exodus 15:6, **Your RIGHT HAND”** (Jesus Christ), **O Lord, was majestic in power. Your RIGHT HAND** (Jesus Christ), **O Lord, shattered the enemy.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Psalms 17:7, **Show the wonder of your great love, you who save by your RIGHT HAND** (Jesus Christ)..... (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Psalms 18:35, **You give me your shield of victory, and your RIGHT HAND** (Jesus Christ) **sustains me.....** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Isaiah 48:13, **.....my RIGHT HAND** (Jesus Christ) **spread out the heavens.....** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

A total of 23 times the term “**right hand**” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Lord Jesus Christ.

Therefore Jesus Christ is called the “arm of the Lord,” the right hand of the Lord, and He has been given honor and glory by being seated at the right hand of God the Father.

Isaiah 53:9, **He was assigned a grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death** (the Hebrew word death is the masculine plural construction of the noun מָוֶת – MAWET meaning “deaths.” This Hebrew word is in the plural referring to the two deaths our Lord suffered on the cross. First of all His substitutionary spiritual death when He was judged for all human sins, then His physical death when His work was completed), **though he had done no violence, nor was any deceit in his mouth.** (NIV) (Explanation provided by the author)

When Jesus Christ went to the cross He had to be free from any personal sin, and He was. He arrived at the cross in the status quo of perfection. As the God-Man He was undiminished deity and true humanity in one person. In His deity He could not sin, and in His humanity He was temptable but impeccable. Therefore, because He had no sin of His own He was made sin for us (II Cor 5:21), and He bore our sins in His own body on the tree (I Peter 2:24). That was His substitutionary spiritual death, as per Romans 6:23, **“The wages of sin is death,”** referring to spiritual death. After He suffered a substitutionary spiritual death in bearing all the sins of mankind, He then died physically. John 19:30 tells us that **Jesus said, “It is finished.” With that, he bowed his head and gave up his spirit.** (NIV)

The virgin birth was a miraculous sign that was a warning to the Jewish nation. Thirty-three years later Jesus went to the cross and died twice. That was the second warning to the Jewish nation. While millions of people had been crucified by the Romans over the centuries only one of them died twice on the cross, and that was the Lord Jesus Christ. His substitutionary spiritual death was to purchase our “so great a salvation,” and then His physical death was to show the world that His work had been accomplished.

3. The gift of tongues was prophesied in Isaiah 28:11-12. During the time of apostasy God told Isaiah to give Israel a warning concerning their destruction. Isaiah 28:11-12, **Very well then, with foreign lips and strange tongues God will speak to this people, (12) to whom he said, “This is the resting place, let the weary rest;” and, “This is the place of repose”** (NIV) Paul quotes Isaiah 28:11-12; I Corinthians 14:21, then he explains it in

I Corinthians 14:22.

I Corinthians 14:21, **In the law** (the Old Testament) **it is written** (Paul quotes Isaiah 28:11-12): **“Through men of strange tongues and through the lips of foreigners I will speak to this people, but even then they will not listen to me,”** says the Lord. (NIV) Then in I Corinthians 14:22 Paul gives a commentary regarding the gift of tongues. **Tongues, then, are a sign, not for believers but for unbelievers.....** (NIV) The word translated **“sign”** in verse 22 is SEMEION, the same word found in Hebrews 2:4.

Isaiah chapter 28 contained a sign for the cursing of Israel. About 15 years before Isaiah prophesied about the strange tongues from the lips of strangers, the Northern Kingdom of Israel had been conquered and destroyed by the Assyrians in 721 B.C. This was because of Jewish apostasy and unbelief. Isaiah then warned the Southern Kingdom.

In his warning he told the Jews that the Chaldeans would come and destroy Jerusalem and the temple. The proud religious leaders of Judah would not listen to Isaiah. They claimed that he talked to them as if they were babies. Isaiah 28:9 **“Who is he trying to teach? To Whom is he explaining his message? To children weaned from their milk, to those just taken from the breast?”** (NIV) Isaiah actually taught them as if they were beginners in school by using the words, **For precept must be upon precept, precept upon precept; line upon line, line upon line, here a little, and there a little.** (Isaiah 28:10) (KJV) God had spoken to them in a very simple manner so that the least among them could understand and no Israelite would have any excuse for not knowing the will and promise of God. The essence of His promise is found in Isaiah 28:12, **“.....This is the resting place, let the weary rest;”** and **“This is the place of repose” — but they would not listen.** (NIV)

Eight hundred years before Isaiah God had warned Israel that **The Lord will bring a nation against you from far away, from the ends of the earth, like an eagle swooping down, a nation whose language you will not understand.** (Deut 28:49) (NIV) The strange language of their conquerors would be a sign of God's judgment. After the ministry of the prophet Isaiah the Lord warned Israel through the prophet Jeremiah. **“O house of Israel,” declares the Lord, “I am bringing a distant nation against you—an ancient and enduring nation, a people whose language you do not know, whose speech you do not understand.”** (Jer 5:15) (NIV) The sign of judgment would be a language they could not understand.

When the apostles spoke at Pentecost to the Jews in the language of many different countries (Acts 2:7-11), the Jews should have known that God's judgment was imminent. His judgment had fallen on rebellious Israel in 721 BC, and then on rebellious Judah in 587 BC. How much more would it fall on those of His people who had rejected the Son of God Himself? In 70 AD that great judgment fell when Jerusalem was destroyed by the Romans. The temple was plundered, desecrated and burned to the ground. Some historians have commented that Jerusalem was so badly destroyed that it had no history for over 60 years. Jesus had warned them in Luke 19:44, **“They will dash you to the ground, you and the children within your walls. They will not leave one stone on another, because you did not recognize the time of God's coming to you.”** (NIV) I want you to notice the reason for the destruction of Jerusalem, **“because you did not recognize the time of God's coming to you.”** (NIV)

Therefore, 50 days after the resurrection of Jesus Christ there was the third great warning to the Jews of impending disaster, the gift of tongues, whereby the gospel was presented to the Jews in foreign languages.

PRINCIPLE: throughout the Old Testament the Jews were responsible for giving the gospel to the Gentiles in the Hebrew language. But their failure to do so meant that they would be evangelized in every language except the Hebrew language. And on the day of Pentecost, in Jerusalem, many Jews were evangelized in Gentile languages. Therefore, the gift of tongues was “a sign,” a warning of the national disaster that was coming on Israel.

The first sign occurred in and around 2-5 BC with the virgin birth of Jesus Christ fulfilling the prophecy of Isaiah 7:14.

The second sign occurred around 30 AD with the ministry of the Lord Jesus Christ in Luke 19:44.

The third and final sign occurred between the years of 30-70 AD. The gift of tongues was only operational for a period of 40 years. This was for the purpose of evangelizing the nation of Israel and warning them of the impending disaster.

All of this is involved in the word **“signs”** or **“miracles.”**

Literally, “God confirming their witness by additional testimony, both with signs (the special warnings to the nation using miracles and unique events).”

And wonders - καὶ τέρασιν – KAI TERASIN. Dative instrumental plural of the noun τέρας – TERAS. Means “a wonder, a miracle, a marvel.” This refers to the special miracles performed by the Lord and the apostles to draw attention to the person of Jesus Christ and His unique provision of our salvation.

When Jesus preached the gospel He also performed “wonders and miracles” that brought more attention to Him and His message. John 10:36b-38, **“.....Why then do you accuse me of blasphemy because I said, ‘I am God’s Son’? (37) Do not believe me unless I do what my Father does. (38) But if I do it, even though you do not believe me, believe the miracles, that you may know and understand that the Father is in me, and I in the Father.”** (NIV) On the day of Pentecost Peter reminded his hearers that **“.....Jesus of Nazareth was a man accredited by God to you by miracles, wonders and signs, which God did among you through him, as you yourselves know. (Acts 2:22)** (NIV) The word translated “miracles” is TERAS, the same word found in our passage of Hebrews 2:4.

God gave similar confirming miracles through the apostles, the first communicators of the gospel after Christ Himself. He gave them what are called temporary spiritual gifts to perform miracles and to speak in tongues. These miracles were only valid until the Bible was completely written. But during the apostolic period these men raised the dead and healed many diseases and afflictions, and through these wonderful works God confirmed their ministry. To argue with an apostle about the gospel was to argue with God. Their preaching and teaching was divine truth, and it was confirmed with miracles.

The miracles that were performed by the apostles were to focus attention on Jesus Christ and the good news of the gospel. Therefore, these miracles only occurred where unbelievers could observe them. Many thousands of individuals accepted the Lord Jesus Christ because of the TERAS (miracles).

These miracles confirmed the Word of God in the mouths of the apostles. But when the last apostle, John, died, these special spiritual gifts of miracles and tongues were terminated. They were replaced by the completed canon of Scripture, the Bible.

Literally, “God confirming their witness by additional testimony, both with signs (special miracles to warn the entire nation of Israel) and wonders (special miracles to focus attention on Jesus Christ, the gospel and God’s plan of salvation individually).”

And with divers miracles -

And with divers - καὶ ποικίλαις – KAI POIKILAIΣ. First of all we have the continuative use of the conjunction KAI translated “and.” With it we have the dative instrumental plural of ποικίλος – POIKILOS. Means “various, a variety, diverse.”

Miracles - δυνάμεσιν – DUNAMESIN. Dative instrumental plural of δύναμις – DUNAMIS. Means “power, strength, ability.”

Literally, “And by means of a variety of abilities.” Or “And by means of a variety of powers.” Or “And by means of various powers.”

All of these things mentioned are the apostolic use of grace dynamics. It is important to note that the primary purpose of these special gifts in the first century was not to alleviate distress and suffering, but to prove that the one performing these miracles spoke or wrote with the power of God. It is also important to note that when the Bible was completed all of these miraculous gifts were not needed any longer. Today, it is what the written Word of God says, and we are not to be swayed by any so-called miracle workers. Only God is in the miracle business today and He does not delegate that authority to anyone else.

God provided grace dynamics at the beginning of the Church Age, and continues to provide them today. In addition, every believer is given at least one spiritual gift at the point of salvation.

Literally, “God confirming their witness by additional testimony, both with signs and miracles, and by means of various powers.”

And gifts of the Holy Ghost -

And gifts - μερισμοῖς – MERISMOIS. Dative instrumental plural of μερισμός – MERISMOS. Means “distributions or impartations, apportionment.” A list of distributions is given I Corinthians chapter twelve and Romans chapter twelve.

Of the Holy Ghost - πνεύματος ἁγίου – PNEUMATOS HAGIOU. First of all we have genitive singular the of the noun πνεῦμα –PNEUMA. Means “spirit.” Here it refers to the Holy Spirit because of the genitive singular of the adjective ἅγιος – HAGIOS meaning “holy.”

Literally, “And distributions from the Holy Spirit.”

According to his own will - This refers to the will of the Holy Spirit.”

Accordinging - κατὰ – KATA. Preposition KATA with the accusative case means “norms and standards.” Literally, “According to the standard.”

To his own will - αὐτοῦ θέλησιν – AUTOU THELESIN. First of all we have the genitive masculine singular of the intensive pronoun αὐτός – AUTOS correctly translated “his own.” With this we have the accusative singular of the noun θέλησις – THELESIS. Means “will or pleasure.” This refers to an act of the sovereign will or pleasure of the Holy Spirit. He is the One who determines our spiritual gifts.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 4: “God confirming their witness by additional testimony, both with signs (*special miracles to warn the entire nation of Israel*) and wonders (*special miracles to focus attention on Jesus Christ, the gospel and God’s plan of individual salvation*), and by means of various powers (*apostolic use of grace dynamics*) and distributions from the Holy Spirit according to the standard of His own sovereign will.”

Doctrine of Spiritual Gifts

1. There are three general passages of Scripture that give us a list of spiritual gifts.
Romans 12:6-8, **We have different gifts, according to the grace given us. If a man’s gift is prophesying, let him use it in proportion to his faith.** (the word “faith” is the genitive singular of the Greek word πίστις – PISTIS. It not only means “faith and belief, but it refers to that which is believed in, i.e. Bible doctrine.” The genitive case is the genitive of possession and refers to something that he possesses. When the believer learns Bible doctrine it becomes something he possesses in his soul, and that is what the Holy Spirit uses to cause all spiritual gifts to function properly) (7) **If it is serving, let him serve; if it is teaching, let him teach; (8) if it is encouraging, let him encourage; if it is contributing to the needs of others, let him give generously; if it is leadership, let him govern diligently; if it is showing mercy, let him do it cheerfully.** (NIV) The words “**serving,**” “**teaching,**” “**encouraging,**” and “**contributing**” are all in the dative singular. These are all datives of advantage. It is to the advantage of every believer to possess a spiritual gift. (Explanation provided by the author)

I Corinthians 12:25-28,there should be no division in the body, but that its parts should have equal concern for each other. (26) If one part suffers, every part suffers with it; if one part is honored, every part rejoices with it.

(27) Now you are the body of Christ, and each one of you is a part of it. (28) And in the church God has appointed first of all apostles, second prophets, third teachers, then workers of miracles, also those having gifts of healing, those able to help others, those with gifts of administration, and those speaking in different kinds of tongues. (NIV)

Ephesians 4:11, It was he who gave some to be apostles, some to be prophets, some to be evangelists, and some to be pastors and teachers, (NIV)

Spiritual gifts are also mentioned in other passages but these three references give the only list of gifts. All spiritual gifts are not mentioned in the Word of God, only a sampling to give us an idea of the concept.

2. Spiritual gifts are the Father's organized witness to the plan of His "so great a salvation." Hebrews 2:4, "God confirming their witness by additional testimony, both with signs (*special miracles to warn the entire nation of Israel*) and wonders (*special miracles to focus attention on Jesus Christ, the gospel and God's plan of individual salvation*), and by means of various powers (*apostolic use of grace dynamics*) and distributions from the Holy Spirit according to the standard of His own sovereign will." (Expanded translation of R.H. Kreger)

This is a personal witness and an organized witness. All spiritual gifts operate and function as a part of a team, working together toward a common goal. Our position on the team depends on our spiritual gift, not our natural abilities or talents acquired through physical birth.

3. At the point of salvation everyone receives at least one spiritual gift from the Holy Spirit.
I Corinthians 12:11, **All these are the work of one and the same Spirit, and he gives them to EACH ONE, just as he determines.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

This gift does not depend upon any merit, or talent, or any human ability of any kind. It is a sovereign decision on the part of the Holy Spirit as seen in Hebrews 2:4, as well as I Corinthians 12:11.

4. Throughout the Church Age each spiritual gift is necessary for the function of the body of Christ on the earth.
I Corinthians 12:27-31, (27) **Now you are the body of Christ, and each one of you is a part of it.** (28) **And in the church God has appointed first of all apostles, second prophets, third teachers, then workers of miracles, also those having gifts of healing, those able to help others, those with gifts of administration, and those speaking in different kinds of tongues.** (29) **Are all apostles? Are all prophets? Are all teachers? Do all work miracles?** (30) **Do all speak in tongues? Do all interpret?** (NIV) (In the Greek text each question begins with the negative μή – ME. When this occurs this tells us that the answer to each question is to be in the negative. Literally, “*Are all apostles? No! Are all prophets? No! Are all teachers? No! Do all work miracles? No! (30) Do all speak in tongues? No! Do all interpret? No!*”) (Explanation provided by the author)

5. All Church Age spiritual gifts were not given until after the resurrection of Jesus Christ. In fact, from the resurrection of Christ to the day of Pentecost (50 days) Jesus Christ Himself was responsible for the distribution of all spiritual gifts.
Ephesians 4:7-8, **But to each one of us grace has been given as Christ apportioned it.** (8) **This is why it says** (quotation from Psalm 68:18): **“When he ascended on high, he led captives in his train and gave gifts to men.”** There were two results of our Lord’s ascension:
 - A. The transfer of all Old Testament saints from the compartment of Paradise in Hades to heaven.
 - B. Spiritual gifts were distributed. Jesus Christ was involved in the initial distribution of spiritual gifts which were temporary gifts. These were temporary, and are no longer in operation. Today, it is the Holy Spirit who gives permanent spiritual gifts to us at salvation.

6. The perspective of spiritual gifts is given in I Corinthians chapter twelve.
 - A. In verses 1-11 we see spiritual gifts in relation to the Holy Spirit.

- B. In verses 12-13 we see spiritual gifts in relation to Jesus Christ.
 - C. In verses 14-31 we see spiritual gifts in relation to each other.
7. Our attitude toward spiritual gifts is given in Romans 12:3, **For by the grace given me I say to every one of you: Do not think of yourself more highly than you ought** (in other words, do not think of yourself in terms of arrogance), **but rather think of yourself with sober judgment, in accordance with the measure of faith God has given you.** (NIV) (the word “faith” is the genitive singular of the noun πίστις – PISTIS. Means “faith, trust, belief, that which is believed in, i.e. Bible doctrine.” Here it refers to “that which is believed in, i.e. Bible doctrine.” We are to think “in accordance with the knowledge of Bible doctrine we have in our souls.”). (Explanation provided by the author)

We are to realize that we do not deserve anything God gives us. He distributes spiritual gifts through the Holy Spirit based on His plan, His will and His pleasure, not on any merit we possess. We are totally undeserving. Everything depends on who and what God is and what He has accomplished through His Son Jesus Christ. All that is needed on our part is “faith, trust, belief.” And the more of the Word of God we learn, the stronger and more efficient our faith will become. Rom 10:17, **Consequently, faith comes from hearing the message, and the message is heard through the word of Christ.** (NIV)

8. The operation of spiritual gifts depends entirely upon the filling or controlling of the Holy Spirit, and the application of Bible doctrine that has been learned by the believer. Acts 1:8, **“But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you; and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth.”** (NIV)

Hebrews 4:12, **For the word of God is living and active. Sharper than any double-edged sword, it penetrates even to dividing soul and spirit, joints and marrow; it judges the thoughts and attitudes of the heart.** (NIV)

9. There are two types of spiritual gifts in the Church Age: temporary gifts and permanent gifts.
- A. Temporary gifts include: apostleship, tongues, healing and the performance of miracles. These gifts were used up to the point the canon of Scripture was completed. The period before the Bible was completed is called the pre-canon period of Church Age history.

The purpose of temporary gifts was to function in the place of the Bible until the Bible was completed in and around 96 AD. After the Bible was completed all temporary spiritual gifts were removed. I Corinthians 13:8-10; Acts 19:11-12 compared with Philippians 2:27 and II Timothy 4:20.

- B. Permanent spiritual gifts such as pastor-teachers, evangelists, administration, giving and helps continue to exist throughout the entire course of the Church Age. Romans 12:6-8 and I Corinthians 12:31.
10. Communication gifts carry both authority and maximum purpose as declared in Ephesians 4:11-13, **It was he who gave some to be apostles, some to be prophets, some to be evangelists, and some to be pastors and teachers, (12) to prepare God's people for works of service** (the word "*prepare*" is from the Greek word *καταρτισμός* – KATARTISMOS. This was an old military term referring to the "training and equipping of soldiers." The communication gifts are given to certain men in order to "train and equip" Christians in the knowledge and application of the Word of God), **so that the body of Christ may be built up** (the Greek word translated "*built up*" is *οικοδομή* – OIKODOME. Means "to build up, to edify, to construct." This refers to the development of the soul with Biblical information.) (13) **until we all reach unity in the faith and in the knowledge of the Son of God and become mature, attaining to the whole measure of the fullness of Christ.** (NIV)

The principle of authority God has delegated to His men is established in Hebrews 13:7 & 17. Heb 13:7, **Remember your leaders, who spoke the word of God to you. Consider the outcome of their way of life and imitate their faith.** (NIV)

Heb 13:17, **Obey your leaders and submit to their authority. They keep watch over you as men who must give an account. Obey them so that their work will be a joy, not a burden, for that would be of no advantage to you.** (NIV)

PRINCIPLE: The only hope for everyone, whether taught correctly or incorrectly as a child is the Word of God. The Word of God can correct all the errors in the lives of everyone if it is only given a chance. It only requires the desire to know the Word of God which we call positive volition. This is where the spiritual gifts of communication come into the picture.

11. Negative volition toward the Word of God and apostasy seek to perpetuate the temporary spiritual gifts beyond the closing of the pre-canon period of the Church Age. Gifts such as apostleship, tongues, healing and miracles are no longer valid in the post-canon period of the Church Age.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 1: “Because of this, we should of necessity pay much more attention to the things which we have heard lest at any time we might drift past them.”

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 2: “For if the Word (Bible doctrine) having been communicated through angels became permanent (and it did), and every violation of the law and every act of unwillingness to listen and learn received a just punishment (and it did).”

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 3: “By what means shall we escape after having disregarded such a great salvation? This salvation was at first communicated through the Lord (in contrast to angels), and was verified under the authoritative teaching of those having heard.”

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 4: “God confirming their witness by additional testimony, both with signs (*special miracles to warn the entire nation of Israel*) and wonders (*special miracles to focus attention on Jesus Christ, the gospel and God’s plan of individual salvation*), and by means of various powers (*apostolic use of grace dynamics*) and distributions from the Holy Spirit according to the standard of His own sovereign will.”

Hebrews 2:5;

Vs 5: **For unto the angels hath he not put in subjection the world to come, whereof we speak.** (KJV)

This verse leads us into a study of the ultimate triumph of man in the Angelic Conflict. This verse requires some exegesis and includes two major doctrines: the Doctrine of Civilizations and the Doctrine of the Millennium.

For unto the angels - οὐ γὰρ ἀγγέλοις – OU GAR AGGELLOIS. The Greek structure is a little different than the English. OU is a negative, and you will notice immediately that there is no negative in the first phrase of the English. In the King James Version of the Bible you have “For unto the angels,” and you don’t see a negative until you get to the verb “hath he NOT put in subjection.” The “not” is out of place in the King James Version. “Not” goes with the particle GAR and the noun ANGELLOIS, and it should be translated “For not the angels.”

God never intended to give angels rule over “the world to come.” Rather, angels are to minister and serve the ones who will be the heirs of salvation (Heb 1:14). In “the world to come” angels will be servants, not rulers.

Literally, “For not to the angels.”

Hath he not put in subjection - Remember, the negative OU is not found in this phrase, it is found in the previous phrase. Literally, “hath he put in subjection.”

Hath he put in subjection - ὑπέταξεν – HUPETAXEN. Aorist active indicative third person singular of the verb ὑποτάσσω – HUPOTASSO. This is a military word as so many of the words in the Bible are. It means “to arrange in ranks, to subordinate, to place under the authority of.” The prefix HUPO means “under the authority of.” The word TASSO means “to set, to place, to arrange in ranks, to assign.”

Literally, “For He has not put under the authority of angels.”

God will not turn over the administration or the ruling authority of the “world to come” to angels. The “world to come” will be a great and glorious world, a world of perfection. Whoever reigns in that world will be glorious indeed, but it will not be angels. Their present authority over men is temporary.

The world to come -

The world - τὴν οἰκουμένην – TEN OIKOUMENEN. First of all we have the accusative singular of the definite article ὁ – HO, plus the accusative singular of the noun οἰκουμένη – OIKOUMENE. Means “the inhabited earth, the entire human race, a civilization.” The writer of Hebrews does not use the Greek κόσμος – KOSMOS usually translated “world,” or the word αἰών – AION meaning “ages or dispensations,” but sometimes translated “world,” because KOSMOS refers the “world order” under the leadership of Satan, and AION refers to “ages or dispensations. The writer is not referring to Satan’s world order, nor is he referring to ages or dispensations. Here he is referring to a “civilization.”

The writer is telling us that there will be an inhabited earth to come. There will be a “new civilization” coming. This new civilization that is coming is called “The Millennium,” or “The Kingdom” of Jesus Christ. The earth itself will be different, and many of the people will be different. But the point being made here in verse five is simply that this new civilization will not be ruled by angels.

To really understand what the writer is telling us, we must keep in mind that this present inhabited world is ruled by angels. The chief fallen angel is Satan, who is also called “**the prince of this world**” in John 12:31 and 14:30. We also know from Ephesians 6:12 that this inhabited world is under the tremendous influence of demons and fallen angels. **For our struggle is not against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the powers of this dark world and against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly realms.** (NIV)

Not only does Satan, fallen angels and demons have authority in this inhabited world, but even the holy angels have limited sovereignty here. Daniel 10:12-21 tells us of Michael and another holy angel fighting against the powerful fallen angels who were influencing the rulers of Persia and Greece. Therefore, the direct rule of this inhabited world is now in the hands of angels, fallen and elect. But even now Jesus Christ controls history, and He will not allow the fallen angels to go against the divine plan for history. Therefore the holy angels are used by Him to keep the fallen angels and demons under control. The conflict between the fallen and holy or elect angels becomes so intense that it carries over into the human realm in the form of war, terrorism and violent crime.

But we must also keep in mind that man was created to rule the inhabited earth, and, in God’s final plan for him, man will one day be the sovereign that

his Creator designed him to be. Therefore it makes no sense to argue that Christ cannot be better than angels because he became a man, for man is lower than the angels for a little while. But he will one day again be above them and will, in fact, even be a part of the judicial witness against fallen angels (I Corinthians 6:3).

Literally, “For not to the angels has he subordinated or put under the authority of the civilization.”

To come - τὴν μέλλουσαν – TEN MELLOUSAN. First of all we have the accusative singular of the definite article used as a relative pronoun meaning “who, which or what.” Literally, “which is to come.” The word “come” is a translation of the present active participle accusative feminine singular of μέλλω – MELLO. Means “to be about to, to be at the point of.” With the definite article used as a relative pronoun, and the present tense of the participle it should be translated “which is about to become.”

Whereof we speak - περὶ ἧς λαλοῦμεν – PERI HES LALOUMEN. First of all we have the preposition PERI meaning “around, about, concerning.” Here PERI should be translated “concerning or regarding.” Next we have the genitive singular of the relative pronoun ἧς – HOS meaning “who, which or what.” With this we have the present active indicative first person plural of the verb λαλέω – LALEO. Means “to say, to speak, to declare.”

PRINCIPLE: the writer is discussing this new order introduced by Christ Himself, which makes the old dispensation of sacrifices, rituals and holy days obsolete. God will not put this coming order under the authority of angels.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 5: For he has not put under the authority of angels the coming civilization, concerning which we are speaking.”

This coming civilization refers to the Millennium, which is the Kingdom of Jesus Christ on the earth after His Second Advent. The Millennial kingdom will not begin at the Rapture, but seven years after the Rapture at the actual Second Advent. Following the Rapture of all Church Age believers there will be a time of unparalleled disaster and violence on the earth called “the Tribulation.” The Tribulation is the last seven years of the Jewish Age. Jesus called it the worst time in all of human history in Matt 24:21, “**For then there will be great distress, unequalled from the beginning of the world until now—and never to be equaled again.**” (NIV)

Following the Tribulation will come the Second Advent of Jesus Christ and the setting up of His one thousand year reign, called the Millennial Kingdom. It

should be noted here that the Church Age, Rapture and the Tribulation are all a part of a different civilization. The coming civilization is the Millennium. The ruler will be Jesus Christ. The Millennial reign of Jesus Christ is both a dispensation and a civilization.

The Doctrine of Civilizations

1. A civilization is defined as a period of human history which begins with believers only, or individuals in innocence, as in the first civilization with Adam and Eve, and terminates with great apostasy and a cataclysmic judgment. In that cataclysmic judgment the entire population of the earth is destroyed except for believers. A civilization is similar to a dispensation in that it is a period of human history, but it has a different type of termination.

2. Each civilization has its own characteristics and cultures. In other words, each civilization has its own climate, environment and characteristics within each species. That is, man has a different lifespan in each civilization; weather is different; animals are different, but each species remains. There is no transmutation from one species to another. There is no evolution from one species to another, but only evolution within each species. Man remains man, animals remain animals, subdivisions in species remain subdivisions. As a matter of fact, angels remain angels: fallen angels remain fallen and elect or holy angels remain elect.

3. Summary outline of each civilization.
 - A. Antediluvian Civilization, also known as the Prediluvian Civilization. Means "before the deluge." This was the civilization before the flood in the days of Noah. It started with two people, a man and woman in innocence. This civilization terminated with a cataclysm, the universal flood. This civilization includes:
 - The dispensation of the Gentiles
 - The Garden of Eden.
 - The fall of man.
 - Cain and Able and the first murder in history.
 - The story of Enoch, who was taken off the earth apart from death.
 - The oldest human being, Methuselah, who lived to be 969 years old.
 - The first prophecy of the coming of Jesus Christ as the Savior of the world in Genesis 3:15.

- B. The Postdiluvian Civilization. This means “after the deluge.” This is the civilization after the flood in the days of Noah. This civilization began with eight people, all believers in Jesus Christ, as He was revealed at that time. They were the family of Noah. This civilization includes:
- The Age of Israel.
 - The time of the Mosaic Law.
 - The Church Age.
 - The Rapture of the church.
 - The Tribulation period, with the antichrist and the war of Armageddon.
 - The Second Advent of Jesus Christ.

This is all a part of the Postdiluvian Civilization. It began with eight believers only and it will end with the baptism of fire by which all unbelievers are removed from the earth and thrown into Hades and placed into the compartment of “torment.”

- C. The Millennial Civilization is the reign of Jesus Christ on the earth for one thousand years, and it will begin with believers only. This will be a unique civilization. There will be believers in resurrection bodies (Church Age and every age before the church), and there will be believers who have survived the Tribulation. These later will enter the Millennium in their normal bodies possessing sinful natures. These will be the ones who will repopulate the earth during the Millennium. Because those born during the Millennium have free will, there will develop a mixture of believers and unbelievers on the earth during this civilization.

During the one thousand year reign of Jesus Christ on earth there will be perfect environment. But at the end of this civilization there will be another great cataclysm. Satan will be set free from his prison and will go out to gather all those discontented and negative human beings and to lead them in a great rebellion against the rulership of Jesus Christ. At that time our Lord will destroy all the rebels and will remove all unbelieving people from the earth. Then there will be the Great White Throne Judgment, prior to the casting of all unbelievers of all the ages into the Lake of Fire with the devil and his angels. Then there will come the destruction of the heaven and the earth with fire. After which the Lord will create a new heaven and a new earth at which time He will begin the fourth and final civilization.

- D. The Eternal Civilization begins with believers only and all of them in resurrection bodies, this will continue forever in that status.

PRINCIPLE: there are only four civilizations in all of human history. Everything else that people call civilizations are only subdivisions from these four.

4. The Antediluvian Civilization began with Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden. During that civilization the climate on the earth was perfect. There was a constant temperature throughout the entire earth. There were no winters, no storms, no tornados and no hurricanes. They didn't even have rainfall. Genesis 2:6 tells us that, **.....streams came up from the earth and watered the whole surface of the ground—** (NIV) This is one reason why the population of the earth did not believe Noah when he said that it would **“rain on the earth for forty days and forty nights”** (Gen 7:4). It had never rained before.

During this civilization people lived to be very old: 500 to 700 years was an average age. The longevity of life came about because of the type of climate that existed on the earth. In the restoration of the earth in Genesis chapter one the Lord placed a large concentration of water in the atmosphere. Genesis 1:6-8, **And God said, “Let there be an expanse between the waters to separate water from water.” (7) So God made the expanse and separated the water under the expanse from the water above the expanse. And it was so. (8) God called the expanse “sky.”.....** (NIV) Because of this heavy concentration of water in the atmosphere, the harmful rays of the sun were deflected much more than they are now. That was also the means of providing a uniform temperature all around the earth. These perfect conditions existed for over two thousand years. But they were all destroyed in the divine cataclysm of Genesis chapter six, the great flood.

5. Beginning with the Postdiluvian Civilization we begin to see the decline in the life span. Gradually man began to live a much shorter life. Actually microorganisms were introduced with the flood. This started infections which were also instrumental in lowering the life span. Noah got drunk from grape juice being changed to wine by the action of fermentation, the first time this had ever occurred. Beginning with this civilization seasons were introduced for the first time. Now there would be winter, fall, spring and summer. Now there would be storms, tornados, hurricanes and a variety of temperatures around the earth. Therefore, with the removal of the extensive water atmosphere and

the introduction of microorganisms, the earth was repopulated, but the life span was gradually reduced. The second civilization was far from perfect. This is the civilization that we are living in today. But everything as we know it today will be destroyed by God's judgment on earth during the Tribulation. During that time mountains will be leveled and islands removed from the sea. The postdiluvian civilization will end with great destruction.

6. Beginning with the Millennial civilization the earth again returns to a perfect environment and a perfect climate. Microorganisms, if they are allowed to exist, will not be allowed to affect human life on the earth at that time. Man's life span is again extended. Some people will live over 1,000 years. The climate will be uniform over all the earth. The Lord actually prepared the climate for the Kingdom during the Tribulation, He removed mountains and islands from their places. Even animal life will change. Animals will lose their fear and their ferocity. But even this perfect Millennial Kingdom will end in disaster. Satan will be set free for a short time to test and tempt those who were born during the Kingdom. In the short time that Satan has he will cause the majority of the earth's population to rebel against Jesus Christ who is ruling the earth at that time, and the Millennial Kingdom will end with what is known as the "Gog and Magog" revolution of Revelation 20:6.

After the Lord puts down the "Gog and Magog" revolution, the believers in the Millennium will receive their resurrection bodies and receive their evaluation. Then all of the unbelievers of all time will be resurrected and will be forced to stand before the Great White Throne of God and be judged, and thrown into the Lake of Fire with Satan, all fallen angels and all demons (Revelation 20:11-15).

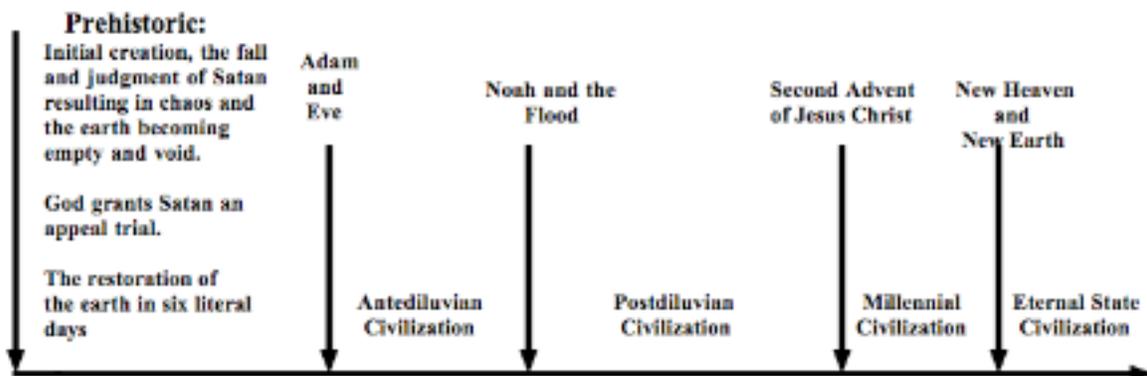
Revelation 21:1 John says, **Then I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the first heaven and the first earth had passed away.....** (NIV) In other words, after the Great White Throne Judgment, and after all of the resurrections are past, the Lord destroys the earth, the universe and heaven itself. That will be the final cataclysm! This is the cataclysm to end all cataclysms. But the Lord does not bring about this great destruction until after all people have received resurrection bodies. The Lord in His wonderful grace makes sure all His people are safe before He brings about this final great cataclysm. Then we will see His great creative power when He creates the "a new heaven and a new earth." (Rev 21:1a)

Therefore not only does the Lord destroy everything, He recreates the heaven and the earth, and this sets the stage for the fourth and final civilization.

7. The fourth and final civilization is called “The Eternal State.” It will have no end. It is populated with believers only, all of them in resurrection bodies. It begins with a new heaven and a new earth and a new Jerusalem. There will never be unbelievers in this civilization.
8. Each civilization begins with a divine blessing and terminates with a divine judgment, except the last one, which has no termination. There will be no end of divine blessing for believers in resurrection bodies. This will continue for ever and ever, time without end. There will be perfect environment forever.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 5: For he has not put under the authority of angels the coming civilization, concerning which we are speaking.”

Genesis 1:1;



Civilization Chart

Doctrine of The Millennium

1. DEFINITION: The word Millennium is taken from the Latin MILLOS meaning “thousand,” and ANNUM meaning “year.” The word Millennium is a theological term based upon Revelation 20:1-3 indicating the thousand year reign of Jesus Christ on the earth and the establishment of the Kingdom over Israel. Acts 1:6-7,**they asked him, “Lord, are you at this time going to restore the kingdom to Israel?” (7) He said to them: “It is not for you to know the times or dates the Father has set by his own authority.”** (NIV)

2. There are at least three different common Millennial views:
- A. **Postmillennialism:** Those who hold this view believe that the preaching of the gospel message will root out all evil on the earth and establish the perfect Millennial Kingdom before Christ returns. Then after the Millennium has been established, Jesus Christ will return and bring judgment on all of the unbelievers and bring an end to the present order of things. This theory is largely disproved by the developments of history and was practically a dead issue until it received revival with the teaching of Dominion and Reconstruction Theology.

Therefore, the Postmillennialists believe that Christ will come back to the earth only after the Spirit-empowered church has established God's Kingdom on the earth by progressively subduing the world and taking dominion over it.

Those who believe in Postmillennialism hold to the view that Israel has no future in the plan of God. Therefore all of the promises and covenants given to Israel in the past are to be fulfilled to the church. Postmillennialism borders on blasphemy and makes God out to be a liar. This type of teaching creates an atmosphere of anti-Semitism.

Postmillennialism became known in detail in England through the teaching of Daniel Whitby who lived from 1638-1726.

- B. **Amillennialism:** Those who follow this view believe that no Millennial Kingdom is coming, except that which is in progress now in the gospel age. This theological view spiritualizes, or give symbolic meaning to all of the kingdom promises in the Old Testament. Zion is construed, not to mean Zion, but to refer to the Christian Church. Amillennialists see no difference between Israel and the Church.

The Apostle Paul makes a clear distinction between Israel and the Church in I Corinthians 10:32, and he also outlines a future for Israel in Romans chapter eleven. Amillennialism does not take into account the full measure of these facts. In fact, Amillennialists believe that Satan is presently bound, but the conditions that prevail on the earth today tell us that Satan is alive and well and is very active in the affairs of the world.

Amillennialism also creates an atmosphere for anti-Semitism because it does not see any future for Israel in the plan of God.

- C. **Premillennialism:** Those who follow this view believe that this age will end in judgment at the Second Coming of Jesus Christ. The Eternal State will not be ushered in at that time, but rather Christ will restore the Kingdom to Israel and He will reign on the earth for 1,000 years.

Premillennialism teaches that the promise of the fulfillment of the covenants to Israel in the Old Testament demand such an earthly kingdom. The Millennium will be the last of the ordered ages, or dispensations of time. Eternity will not and cannot begin until the Millennial Kingdom is complete.

The rest of this doctrine will be characterized by the explanation of this future kingdom called the Millennium. Therefore, the Premillennial view is the closest to what the Bible teaches.

3. The Millennial Kingdom was promised in II Samuel 7:8-17, **Now then, tell my servant David, “This is what the Lord Almighty says: I took you from the pasture and from following the flock to be ruler over my people Israel. (9) I have been with you wherever you have gone, and I have cut off all your enemies from before you. Now I will make your name great, like the names of the greatest men of the earth. (10) And I will provide a place for my people Israel and will plant them so that they can have a home of their own and no longer be disturbed. Wicked people will not oppress them anymore, as they did at the beginning (11) and have done ever since the time I appointed leaders over my people Israel. I will also give you rest from all your enemies.**

“The Lord declares to you that the Lord himself will establish a house for you: (12) When your days are over and you rest with your fathers, I will raise up your offspring to succeed you, who will come from your own body, and I will establish the throne of his kingdom forever. (14) I will be his father, and he will be my son. When he does wrong, I will punish him with the rod of men, with floggings inflicted by men. (15) But my love will never be taken away from him, as I took it away from Saul, whom I removed from before you. (16) Your house and your kingdom will endure forever before me; your throne will be established forever.”

(17) **Nathan reported to David all the words of this entire revelation.** (NIV) It should be noted here that in some prophecies of Scripture there is a near and a far fulfillment. The near fulfillment refers to that prophetic event that would occur in the lifetime of the prophet, or the lifetime of those to whom it was written. The far fulfillment deals with an event far into the future beyond the lifetime of the prophet and those to whom he was writing.

In II Samuel 7:8-17 we see this principle displayed. The near fulfillment in this passage is that of Solomon being the “**offspring**” of David to succeed him. That would occur soon after the death of David. The far fulfillment refers to Jesus Christ, a descendant of David many centuries into the future. It is said that God would “**establish the throne of his kingdom forever**” (II Sam 7:13).

4. The Millennium was prophesied in Isaiah chapters 2, 11 and 35. Isaiah 2:1-5, **This is what Isaiah son of Amos saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem:**

(2) **In the last days the mountain of the Lord’s temple will be established as chief among the mountains; it will be raised above the hills, and all nations will stream to it.**

(3) **Many peoples will come and say, “Come, let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob. He will teach us his ways, so that we may walk in his paths.” The law will go out from Zion, the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.**

(4) **He will judge between the nations and will settle disputes for many people. They will beat their swords into plowshares and their spears into pruning hooks. Nation will not take up sword against nation, nor will they train for war anymore.**

(5) **Come, O house of Jacob, let us walk in the light of the Lord.** (NIV)

Isaiah 11:1-9, **A shoot will come up from the stump of Jesse; from his roots a Branch will bear fruit. (2) The Spirit of the Lord will rest on him—the Spirit of wisdom and of understanding, the Spirit of counsel and of power, the Spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord— (3) and he will delight in the fear of the Lord.**

He will not judge by what he sees with his eyes, or decide by what he hears with his ears; (4) but with righteousness he will judge the needy, with justice he will give decisions for the poor of the earth. He will strike the earth with the rod of his mouth; with the breath of his lips he will slay the wicked. (5) Righteousness will be his belt and faithfulness the sash around his waist.

(6) The wolf will live with the lamb, the leopard will lie down with the goat, the calf and the lion and the yearling together; and a little child will lead them. (7) The cow will feed with the bear, their young will lie down together, and the lion will eat straw like the ox. (8) The infant will play near the hole of the cobra, and the young child put his hand into the viper's nest. (9) They will neither harm nor destroy on all my holy mountain, for the earth will be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the sea. (NIV)

Isaiah 35:1-2, The desert and the parched land will be glad; the wilderness will rejoice and blossom. Like the crocus, (2) it will burst into bloom; it will rejoice greatly and shout for joy. The glory of Lebanon will be given to it, the splendor of Carmel and Sharon; they will see the glory of the Lord, the splendor of our God. (NIV)

The Millennium is prophesied in the Old Testament, proclaimed in the gospels, postponed by the epistles and plagiarized by the Tribulation with its political and religious organizations. It will be proclaimed by the angelic heralds of Revelation 10 and the human heralds of Revelation 11 and presented at the Second Advent of Jesus Christ.

5. During the Millennium there will be optimum spirituality among believers **Isaiah 65:24, Before they call I will answer; while they are still speaking I will hear. (NIV)**

Joel 2:28-29, And afterward, I will pour out my Spirit on all people. Your sons and daughters will prophesy, your old men will dream dreams, your young men will see visions. (29) Even on my servants, both men and women, I will pour out my Spirit in those days. (NIV)

Zechariah 14:16-17, Then the survivors from all the nations that have attacked Jerusalem will go up year after year to worship the King, the Lord Almighty, and to celebrate the

Feast of Tabernacles. (17) If any of the peoples of the earth do not go up to Jerusalem to worship the King, the Lord Almighty, they will have no rain. (NIV)

During the Millennial reign of Jesus Christ everyone will worship the King whether they want to or not. At the start of the Millennium there will be many willing worshipers, but as the kingdom progresses many of those who are born during this time will not have the desire to go to Jerusalem and worship the King, the Lord Almighty, Jesus Christ.

But for those who remain positive during this time, spirituality will involve emotion for the first time. Ecstasies will be produced by the ministry of the Holy Spirit. Emotion in worship and spirituality will be bona fide because Jesus Christ is present on the earth. By way of contrast, emotion and ecstasies during the Church Age are not legitimate signs of spirituality because Jesus Christ is absent. In the Millennium the ministry of the Holy Spirit will have an effect on the body which it does not have in this age.

6. During the Millennium Israel will be restored as a nation. Isaiah 10:20-23, **In that day the remnant of Israel, the survivors of the house of Jacob, will no longer rely on him who struck them down but will truly rely on the Lord, the Holy One of Israel. (21) A remnant will return, a remnant of Jacob will return to the Mighty God. (22) Though your people, O Israel, be like the sand of the sea, only a remnant will return. Destruction has been decreed, overwhelming and righteous. (23) The Lord, the Lord Almighty, will carry out the destruction decreed upon the whole land. (NIV)**

Isaiah 11:11-16, **In that day the Lord will reach out his hand a second time to reclaim the remnant that is left of his people from Assyria, from Lower Egypt, from Upper Egypt, from Cush, from Elam, from Babylonia, from Hamath and from the islands of the sea.**

(12) He will raise a banner from the nations and gather the exiles of Israel; he will assemble the scattered people of Judah from the four quarters of the earth. (13) Ephraim's jealousy will vanish, and Judah's enemies will be cut off; Ephraim will not be jealous of Judah, nor Judah hostile toward Ephraim. (14) They will swoop down on the slopes of Philistia to the west; together they will plunder the people to the east. They will lay hands on Edom and Moab, and the

Ammonites will be subject to them. (15) The Lord will dry up the gulf of the Egyptian sea; with a scorching wind he will sweep his hand over the Euphrates River. He will break it up into seven streams so that men can cross over in sandals. (16) There will be a highway for the remnant of his people that is left from Assyria, as there was for Israel when they came up from Egypt. (NIV)

Isaiah 65:19, I will rejoice over Jerusalem and take delight in my people; the sound of weeping and of crying will be heard in it no more. (NIV)

Zechariah 8:20-23, This is what the Lord Almighty says: “Many peoples and the inhabitants of many cities will yet come, (21) and the inhabitants of one city will go to another and say, ‘Let us go at once to entreat the Lord and seek the Lord Almighty. I myself am going.’ (22) And many peoples and powerful nations will come to Jerusalem to seek the Lord Almighty and to entreat him.”

(23) This is what the Lord Almighty says: “In those days ten men from all languages and nations will take firm hold of one Jew by the hem of his robe and say, ‘Let us go with you, because we have heard that God is with you.’” (NIV)

Zechariah 10:6-12, “I will strengthen the house of Judah and save the house of Joseph. I will restore them because I have compassion on them. They will be as though I had not rejected them, for I am the Lord their God and I will answer them. (7) The Ephraimites will become like mighty men, and their hearts will be glad as with wine. Their children will see it and be joyful; their hearts will rejoice in the Lord. (8) I will signal for them and gather them in. Surely I will redeem them; they will be as numerous as before. (9) Though I scatter them among the peoples, yet in distant lands they will remember me. They and their children will survive, and they will return. (10) I will bring them back from Egypt and gather them from Assyria. I will bring them to Gilead and Lebanon, and there will not be room enough for them. (11) They will pass through the sea of trouble; the surging sea will be subdued and all the depths of the Nile will dry up. Assyria’s pride will be brought down and Egypt’s scepter

will pass away. (12) I will strengthen them in the Lord and in his name they will walk.” (NIV)

7. In the Millennium all of the unconditional covenants are fulfilled to Israel. Daniel 9:24, **Seventy sevens (490 years) are cut out of time for your people and for your city (Jerusalem) to bring to an end to the fifth cycle of discipline** (referring to the removal of the curse on the Jews of being scattered. See volume one page 21) **by restraining it** (literally, “to restrain sin,” referring to the Millennial reign of Jesus Christ when sin will be restrained on the earth), **to make reconciliation for iniquity** (the regathering of Israel to her homeland), **to bring in everlasting righteousness** (the Millennial Kingdom), **to seal up the vision of prophecy** (to complete all prophecy pertaining to the Jews and Israel) **and to anoint the holy of holies** (the dedication of the Millennial Temple). (Expanded translation from the teachings of Robert H. Kreger)

The unconditional covenants are: the Abrahamic covenant, the Davidic covenant, the Palestinian covenant and the New Covenant to Israel.

See page 238 for a full description of the unconditional covenants to Israel.

8. The Millennium will have perfect environment.
- A. Perfect environment will exist because Satan will be bound, Revelation 20:1-3, **And I saw an angel coming down out of heaven, having the key to the Abyss and holding in his hand a great chain. (2) He seized the dragon, that ancient serpent, who is the devil, or Satan, and bound him for a thousand years. (3) He threw him into the Abyss, and locked and sealed it over him, to keep him from deceiving the nations anymore until the thousand years were ended. After that, he must be set free for a short time.** (NIV) With the binding of Satan there will be no religion on the earth during the Millennial Kingdom. Religion is a part of Satan’s policy of human good and evil. Religion always combines the functions of human good and evil.

All the nations of the earth will enjoy perfect environment under the reign of Jesus Christ. No nation will be exposed to Satanic influence because Satan will be in his prison. Therefore all nations will have perfect prosperity, perfect economies, a perfect judicial system, a perfect educational system (which

teaches children and adults the ways of the Lord Jesus Christ), a perfect social system (which will take care of everyone who is in need no matter what the need may be). And the Lord Jesus Christ will be the chief authority over all the nations and His decision will be final. There will be no due process under the reign of Jesus Christ.

- B. There will be universal peace. Psalm 46:9, **He makes wars cease to the ends of the earth; he breaks the bow and shatters the spear, he burns the shields with fire.** (NIV)

Isaiah 2:4, **He will judge between the nations and will settle disputes for many peoples. They will beat their swords into plowshares and their spears into pruning hooks. Nation will not take up sword against nation, nor will they train for war anymore.** (NIV)

Hosea 2:18, **In that day (the Millennium) I will make a covenant for them with the beasts of the field and the birds of the air and the creatures that move along the ground. Bow and sword and battle I will abolish from the land, so that all may lie down in safety.** (NIV)

(Explanation provided by the author)

Michah 4:3, **He will judge between many peoples and will settle disputes for strong nations far and wide. They will beat their swords into plowshares and their spears into pruning hooks. Nation will not take up sword against nation, nor will they train for war anymore.** (NIV)

These plus many other passages teach that wars will not cease until Jesus Christ is actually reigning on the earth. That is why He is called the **“Prince of peace”** in Isaiah 9:6. Any nation that attempts to follow what the Bible teaches and **“beat their swords into plowshares and spears into pruning hooks”** in this age will be destroyed by war. In fact, the Apostle Paul warned people about getting involved in establishing peace in the world in this age. He said in I Thessalonians 5:3, **While people are saying “Peace and safety,” destruction will come on them suddenly, as labor pains on a pregnant woman, and they will not escape.** (NIV) Therefore, in order to avoid slavery, national destruction and national blackmail we must be prepared for war constantly. That is the only way to maintain

freedom and prosperity within nations before the Lord's return to set up His kingdom. This is a Biblical principle.

- C. There will be universal prosperity, Psalm 72:7, **In his days (the rule of Jesus Christ on the earth) the righteous will flourish; prosperity will abound till the moon is no more.** (NIV)
(Explanation provided by the author)

Psalm 72:16, **Let grain abound throughout the land; on the tops of the hills may it sway. Let its fruit flourish like Lebanon; let it thrive like the grass of the field.** (NIV)

Free enterprise will operate worldwide. Competition from motivation and profit will exist creating a perfect world economy. That principle can work today on a limited basis under the principles of establishment. But during the Millennial Kingdom Jesus Christ will force all nations to follow the principles of establishment which includes the free enterprise system of economics.

- D. There will be a perfect world government because the world leader will be Jesus Christ ruling with believers in resurrection bodies.
Isaiah 11:1-2, **A shoot will come up from the stump of Jesse; from his roots a Branch will bear fruit. (2) The Spirit of the Lord will rest on him—the Spirit of wisdom and of understanding, the Spirit of counsel and of power, the Spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord—** (NIV)

Zechariah 14:9, **The Lord will be king over the whole earth. On that day there will be one Lord, and his name the only name.** (NIV)

II Timothy 2:12b**we will also reign with him.....** (NIV)

- E. There will be a universal knowledge of God, Isaiah 11:9b, **.....the earth will be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the sea.** (NIV)
- F. There will be longevity of life in the human race, Isaiah 65:20, **Never again will there be in it an infant who lives but a few days, or an old man who does not live out his years;**

he who dies at a hundred will be thought a mere youth; he who fails to reach a hundred will be considered accursed. (NIV)

9. There will be perfect objectivity in the administration of justice. Isaiah 11:3-5, **And he will delight in the fear of the Lord. He will not judge by what he sees with his eyes, or decide by what he hears with his ears; (4) but with righteousness he will judge the needy, with justice he will give decisions for the poor of the earth. He will strike the earth with the rod of his mouth; with the breath of his lips he will slay the wicked. (5) Righteousness will be his belt and faithfulness the sash around his waist. (NIV)**

10. There will be perfect environment in nature.
 - A. Creation will be released from the bondage of sin. Rom 8:19-22, **The creation waits in eager expectation for the sons of God to be revealed. (20) For the creation was subjected to frustration, not by its own choice, but by the will of the one who subjected it, in hope (21) that the creation itself will be liberated from its bondage to decay and brought into the glorious freedom of the children of God.**

(22) **We know that the whole creation has been groaning as in the pains of childbirth right up to the present time. (NIV)**

 - B. Plant and animal life will abound. Isaiah 35:1-2, **The desert and the parched land will be glad; the wilderness will rejoice and blossom. Like the crocus, (2) it will burst into bloom; it will rejoice greatly and shout for joy. The glory of Lebanon will be given to it, the splendor of Carmel and Sharon; they will see the glory of the Lord, the splendor of our God. (NIV)**

 - C. Animals will lose their ferocity: Isaiah 11:6-9, **The wolf will live with the lamb, the leopard will lie down with the goat, the calf and the lion and the yearling together; and a little child will lead them. (7) The cow will feed with the bear, their young will lie down together, and the lion will eat straw like the ox. (8) The infant will play near the hole of the cobra, and the young child put**

his hand into the viper's nest. (9) They will neither harm nor destroy on all my holy mountain, for the earth will be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the sea. (NIV)

Isaiah 65:25, The wolf and the lamb will feed together, and the lion will eat straw like the ox, but dust will be the serpent's food. They will neither harm nor destroy on all my holy mountain, says the Lord. (NIV)

11. There will be a great increase in the world's population. Since death will take a holiday, there will be longevity of life (Isaiah 65:20). Because this civilization begins with so few people there will be a need to repopulate the world. Therefore, during the 1,000 year Kingdom the population of the world will multiply greatly.
12. There will be the Gog and Magog Revolution which terminates the perfect environment of the Millennial Kingdom. Revelation 20:7-10, **When the thousand years are over, Satan will be released from his prison (8) and will go out to deceive the nations in the four corners of the earth—Gog and Magog—to gather them for battle. In number they are like the sand on the seashore. (9) They marched across the breadth of the earth and surrounded the camp of God's people, the city he loves (Jerusalem). But fire came down from heaven and devoured them. (10) And the Devil, who deceived them, was thrown into the lake of burning sulfur, where the beast and the false prophet had been thrown. They will be tormented day and night for ever and ever. (NIV)**

The purpose for Satan's release is to tempt and test those individuals who were born during the 1,000 Kingdom. These individuals have never received any temptation or testing from the Devil, therefore they have to be tempted and tested just as every other member of the human race has been tested and tempted down through human history.

When Satan is released and sets out to test, tempt and to create unrest and violence on the earth, he does not in any way attempt to improve the environment with this revolution. His revolution only has one thing in mind: to dethrone the Lord Jesus Christ. This is a simple power grab on the part of Satan. This revolution proves that perfect environment is not the solution to man's problem. Mankind's problems come from the sinful nature. For 1,000 years the human race had been living in perfect peace and harmony, but when Satan is released he begins to sow discord and unrest as he recruits many followers.

(Rev 20:8b tells us that **“In number they are like the sand on the seashore.”**).

This tells us that people are never satisfied no matter how good things may be. Jesus Christ will rule and reign on the earth for 1,000 years, and during this time there will be perfect health for everyone, death almost disappears, everyone will have plenty of food to eat and a place to sleep. There will be a perfect and just government and judicial system. Yet, when Satan is released at the end of the Millennium, he will have no trouble getting millions and possibly billions of people to follow in his revolt against the Lord Jesus Christ and His perfect Kingdom. But the Lord will wait until everyone has chosen sides before He destroys all the rebels.

Immediately following this revolution all of the believers of the Millennium will receive their resurrection bodies and will stand before the evaluation seat, known as the “judgment seat of Christ.” Then there will be the resurrection of all unbelievers. At that time they will all stand before the Great White Throne Judgment (Rev 20:11-15). This judgment is only for those who have never trusted in Jesus Christ, and will determine the intensity of the heat they will have to endure for all eternity. There is no equality in heaven or the lake of fire.

After the Great White Throne Judgment the Lord will destroy the heavens and the earth with fire (II Peter 3:10). This will be the greatest cataclysm anyone has ever seen. It will make the flood of Genesis 6 seem like a picnic. And after all has been destroyed, the Lord will create a new heaven and new earth (Rev 21:1). At that time the Eternal State will begin. In the Eternal State there will be no unbelievers. The believers will be in resurrection bodies. All will be perfect, and this will continue for ever and ever world without end. Because our human minds are unable to comprehend the wonderful things planned for us, the Lord does not communicate these future blessings.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 1: “Because of this, we should of necessity pay much more attention to the things which we have heard, lest at any time we might drift past them.”

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 2: “For if the Word (Bible doctrine) having been communicated through angels became permanent (and it did), and every violation of the law and every act of unwillingness to listen and learn received a just punishment (and it did).”

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 3: “By what means shall we escape after having disregarded such a great salvation, which was at first communicated through the Lord (in contrast to angels), and was verified under the authoritative teaching of those having heard.”

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 4: “God confirming their witness by additional testimony, both with signs (*special miracles to warn the entire nation of Israel*) and wonders (*special miracles to focus attention on Jesus Christ, the gospel and God’s plan of individual salvation*), and by means of various powers (*apostolic use of grace dynamics*) and distributions from the Holy Spirit according to the standard of His own sovereign will.”

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 5: For he has not put under the authority of angels the coming civilization, concerning which we are speaking.”

In verses 6 - 9 we have the description of the two Adams and the Angelic Conflict.

Hebrews 2:6;

Vs 6: **But one in a certain place testified, saying, What is man, that thou art mindful of him? or the son of man, that thou visitest him? (KJV)**

Verse six begins with documentation. Again the writer quotes the Old Testament from the Greek translation (the Septuagint also known as the LXX).

But - δέ - DE. This particle is used as a postpositive conjunction in a transitional sense. It is properly translated “but.”

One - τις - TIS. Indefinite pronoun meaning “a certain one or someone.” Someone refers to the human writer of Psalm eight. The human writer of Psalm eight was David. When David wrote Psalm eight he was in spiritual maturity and occupied with the person of Jesus Christ as He was revealed at that time. David expressed his occupation with Christ and his understanding of the grace of God in Psalm eight.

Therefore, the word “someone” refers to David as the human writer of Psalm eight.

Literally, “But someone.”

In a certain place - που - POU. This is an enclitic indefinite particle meaning “somewhere, in a certain place.” This particle is used to specify a definite or specific passage of Scripture. Here it is referring to Psalm 8:4-6. This is the passage that will be quoted in the next few verses, beginning in Hebrews 2:6. This introduces the documentation to the fact that the Second Advent will bring a radical change to this world.

The ruler of this world at the present time is Satan. But he will be replaced by the Lord Jesus Christ as the Son of David and as the last Adam.

After human history has run its course there will have been only two men who have ruled the entire world: the first Adam ruled during the period after his creation and before his fall in Genesis chapter three. At his fall he was superseded by Satan, an angel. Satan will rule the world from the fall of man until the Second Advent of Jesus Christ, at which time the last Adam, the God-Man will become the ruler of the world.

COMPARISONS OF THE TWO ADAMS

THE FIRST ADAM	THE LAST ADAM
1. The first Adam was created perfect.	The Last Adam was born born perfect.
2. The first Adam was created spiritually alive.	The last Adam was born spiritually alive.
3. The first Adam was created to rule the world.	The last Adam was born to rule the world.
4. The first Adam was given a perfect bride to be his companion.	The last Adam will receive His perfect bride at the Rapture of the Church.
5. The first Adam was created by God the Son.	The last Adam was conceived in the womb of a virgin by God the Holy Spirit.
6. Through a negative decision on the part of the first Adam the entire human race became spiritually dead.	Through the positive decision on the part of the last Adam many will become spiritually alive.
7. Through a negative decision on the part of the first Adam an angel, Satan, became the ruler of the world.	Through the positive decision on the part of the last Adam, an angel, Satan, will be removed as the ruler of the world and replaced by the God-Man, Jesus Christ.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 8. The first Adam went negative to God's will and made a wrong decision concerning the tree in the Garden of Eden. | The last Adam remained positive to God's will and made a right decision concerning the tree on Calvary. |
| 9. The first Adam suffered a spiritual death because of his own sin. | The last Adam suffered a substitutionary spiritual death on the cross for the sins of everyone else. He had no sins of His own because He was sinless. |
| 10. The first Adam fathered offspring in his own likeness, spiritual death. | The last Adam fathered offspring in His own likeness, spiritual life. |
| 11. The first Adam began human history in perfect environment. | The last Adam will end human history in perfect environment. |

PRINCIPLE: the descendants of the first Adam are all born spiritually dead, but through faith in the last Adam they can become spiritually alive.

S U M M A R Y

1. Satan as the ruler of the world is described in II Cor 4:4 as **The god of this age (Satan) has blinded the minds of unbelievers, so that they cannot see the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, which is the image of God.** (NIV)

Ephesians 2:2b,**the ways of this world and of the ruler of the kingdom of the air, the spirit who is now at work in those who are disobedient.** (NIV)

John 12:31 Satan is called **“the prince of this world.....”** (NIV)

John 14:30, Satan is called **“the prince of this world....”** (NIV)

John 16:11, Satan is called **“the prince of this world....”** (NIV)

2. During Satan’s rule on the earth Jesus Christ is absent and is seated at the right hand of God the Father. Satan will continue to rule the earth until Jesus Christ leaves the throne at the right hand of God and returns to the earth to take over its rulership at the Second Advent.
3. The Second Advent of Christ not only includes “operation footstool” resulting in Satan’s overthrow, but it also sets the stage for a dramatic change on the earth. This change will create a new civilization on the earth, the Millennial Kingdom.
4. Satan will be overthrown in the future. In the meantime, one of the functions of our priesthood as believers in Jesus Christ is to avoid trying to whitewash the devil’s world. As believers in Jesus Christ we have a bona fide function in this world, to live under the laws of divine establishment. The divine laws of establishment are: free will, marriage, family and nationalism. The laws of establishment were designed by God for all members of the human race and we as Christians should live by them as we continue to learn and grow spiritually in our Christian lives.

Believers who live by the laws of establishment and continue to grow spiritually form a part of the restraining ministry on earth before the Lord’s return. Paul briefly describes this in II Thess 2:5-8. In This chapter Paul gives the conditions by which the antichrist and the Tribulation period will be revealed. **Don’t you remember that when I was with you I used to tell you these things? (6) And now you know what is holding him back** (the words “holding him back” is a translation of the present active participle of *κατέχω* – KATECHO. Means “to hold down or restrain.” That which restrains refers to believers who make up the true church on earth. Those who follow the laws of establishment and who are positive to learning the Word of God), **so that he may be revealed at the proper time. (7) For the secret power of lawlessness is already at work; but the one who now holds it back** (here it refers to the Holy Spirit) **will continue to do so till he is taken out of the way** (this refers to the Rapture of the Church). **(8) And then the lawless one** (the antichrist of the Tribulation period) **will be revealed, whom the Lord Jesus will overthrow with the breath of his mouth and destroy by the splendor of his coming.** (NIV) (Explanations provided by the author)

5. The time is coming when Jesus Christ will return to overthrow Satan and set up His Millennial Kingdom on the earth. But until then this is the Devil's world. And the only protection that we have in his world apart from God's overruling power in grace are the divine laws of establishment.

Literally, "But someone has testified somewhere."

This does not indicate that the writer was either ignorant or forgetful of Scripture. He obviously knows the passage well since he quotes it perfectly from the Septuagint (The Greek Old Testament). The writer of Hebrews knew that this was Psalm 8:4-6 and he knew that David wrote that Psalm. Throughout the book of Hebrews there is no name given to the writer of this great book, therefore we should not be surprised when he does not mention the name of the writer of the Old Testament passage from which he quotes. The human writer of Hebrews is more concerned that his Jewish readers understand the importance of the Old Testament. That is also the message of God. It is the voice of the Holy Spirit; the human writer of this book considers his name incidental to the real issue. Besides, he knew that the Jewish readers of the epistle knew the passage he was quoting, and who the human writer was. But he does not make an issue of anything anyone does: he simply emphasizes what God's Word says.

Literally, "But someone somewhere." This refers to David expressing his spiritual maturity in Psalm 8:4-6.

Testified - διεμαρτύρατο - DIEMARTURATO. First aorist middle indicative third person singular of διαμαρτύρομαι - DIAMARTUROMAI. Means "to make a solemn affirmation, to make an earnest charge, to make an intense testimony." David gave an intense or a solemn testimony as to who and what Jesus Christ really is. Reason? Because he had a tremendous amount of Bible doctrine in his soul and he had advanced to spiritual maturity.

Literally, "But someone has made a solemn testimony somewhere."

Psalm 8:3-9 taken from the Septuagint translation by Zondervan Publishing House. *For I will regard the heavens, the work of thy fingers; the moon and the stars, which thou has established. (4) What is man, that thou art mindful of him? (5) Thou madest him a little less than angels, thou hast crowned him with glory and honour; (6) and thou hast set him over the works of thy hands: thou has put all things under his feet: (7) sheep and all oxen, yea, and the cattle of the field: (8) the birds of the sky, and the fish of the sea, the creatures passing through the paths of the sea. (9) O Lord our Lord, how wonderful is thy name in all the earth!*

It is very possible the writer of Hebrews and King David were thinking of the first chapter of Genesis. Genesis 1:26-31, **Then God said, “Let us make man in our image, in our likeness, and let them rule over the fish of the sea and the birds of the air, over the livestock, over all the earth, and over all the creatures that move along the ground.”**

(27) So God created man in his own image, in the image of God he created him; male and female he created them.

(28) God blessed them and said to them, “Be fruitful and increase in number; fill the earth and subdue it. Rule over the fish of the sea and the birds of the air and over living creatures that move on the ground.” (29) Then God said, “I give you every seed-bearing plant on the face of the whole earth and every tree that has fruit with seed in it. They will be yours for food. (30) And to all the beasts of the air and all the creatures that move on the ground—everything that has the breath of life in it—I give every green plant for food.” And it was so.

(31) God saw all that he had made, and it was very good. And there was evening, and there was morning—the sixth day. (NIV)

Hebrews 2:6;

Literally, “But someone has made a solemn testimony somewhere.”

Saying - λέγων – LEGON. Present active participle nominative masculine singular of λέγω LEGO. Means “to say, to speak, to communicate.” The present active participle tells us that the “Word of God lives and abides forever,” (1 Peter 1:23). LEGO introduces the quotation of Psalm 8:4. LEGO acts as quotation marks in the Greek.

What is man - Τί ἐστὶν ἄνθρωπος – TI ESTIN ANTHROPOS.

What - Τί – TI. Nominative singular of the interrogative pronoun τίς – TIS. Meaning “who? What? Why?”

Is - ἐστὶν – ESTIN. Present active indicative third person singular of the verb εἶμι – EIMI. Means “to be, to exist.” It is correctly translated “is.”

Man - ἄνθρωπος – ANTHROPOS. This is a nominative masculine singular of the noun ἄνθρωπος – ANTHROPOS. This is the generic term for mankind. All of mankind is totally and completely depraved. This refers to the fact that you and I and all members of the human race are born into this world spiritually dead.

The moment we are born and become physically alive, we are spiritually dead to God. We are born with a sinful nature. We do not become sinners by a personal act of sin, we commit sin because we are born with a sinful nature. The only person who became a sinner by a personal act of sin was Adam. Adam went negative toward the prohibition of God and ate of the forbidden fruit. At that point he became a sinner and acquired a sinful nature. Adam did not possess a sinful nature before his act of disobedience. Adam was not created with a sinful nature. God is not the author of sin, God has nothing to do with sin. He does not sponsor it, nor does He encourage it. He can do nothing to sin but to condemn it and judge it.

Therefore, Adam was created by God without a sinful nature. But by an act of his own free will he became a sinner. But you and I acquire the sinful nature through physical birth. So there is a big difference between you and me and Adam. We were born spiritually dead with our sinful natures intact, while Adam acquired a sinful nature through his own free will. In Adam's free will he was negative to the Word of God in the Garden of Eden. At the point of his negative volition to the command of God he became a sinner and acquired a sinful nature.

PRINCIPLE: since all of us are born into the world spiritually dead, we are all under the condemnation of “total depravity.” All personal sins are merely a manifestation of our possession of the sinful nature.

Literally, “But someone has testified somewhere, ‘What is mankind.’”

That thou art mindful of him? - ὅτι μνησκη αὐτοῦ – HOTI MIMNESKO AUTOU. First of all we have the subordinate conjunction HOTI correctly translated “that.” Next we have the present middle indicative second person singular of the verb μνησκω – MIMNESKO. Means “to remember, to call to memory.”

PRESENT TENSE (customary) emphasizing that which habitually occurs. God habitually “remembers” mankind. The basic premise of the present tense is linear aktionsart in present time.

MIDDLE VOICE (reflexive) This emphasizes the action of the subject. God habitually remembers mankind.

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative) referring to the absolute dogmatic fact of the reality that God habitually remembers mankind.

Literally, That you yourself remember him?"

The Bible teaches the "total depravity" of mankind. Romans 3:10-18. In this passage Paul quotes a series of Old Testament passages. **As it is written: "There is no one righteous, not even one; (11) there is no one who understands, no one who seeks God. (12) All have turned away, they have together become worthless; there is no one who does good, not even one." (13) "Their throats are open graves; their tongues practice deceit." "The poison of vipers is on their lips." (14) "Their mouths are full of cursing and bitterness." (15) "Their feet are swift to shed blood; (16) ruin and misery mark their ways, (17) and the way of peace they do not know." (18) "There is no fear of God before their eyes." (NIV)** The passages quoted are: Psalms 14:1-3; 53:1-3; Ecclesiastes 7:20; Psalm 5:9; 140: 3; 10:7; Isaiah 59:7-8; Psalm 36:1.

Therefore, the Bible teaches that the human race is worthless, useless and has nothing that God wants or needs. In fact, there is nothing in mankind that God can accept. Everything that mankind does is totally and completely rejected by God. So, as David said in Psalm 8:4 "What is mankind that you yourself remember him?" In other words, David is saying, "Look how depraved and sinful mankind is, how can you, O God, even consider him?"

One of the greatest acts of grace after the fall of man is when Jesus Christ came back into the garden, and He came back with a promise, the promise of the coming redeemer and His work on the cross, Genesis 3:15, **And I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your offspring and hers; He will crush your head, and you will strike his heel."** (NIV) The seed of the woman is Jesus Christ, and He will crush the serpent's head by means of His work on the cross. Crushing the head of the serpent refers to destroying his authority and power. The term "head" speaks of authority and power. This promise in Genesis 3:15 is the first prophecy of the cross, and the work of Jesus Christ in destroying the power of Satan. This is all a part of the Angelic Conflict.

Therefore, you and I and every other member of the human race can do nothing to please God. All of us are imperfect and totally depraved and have absolutely nothing to offer God, but God remembered us! This is a phenomenal concept of grace.

Literally, “What is mankind that You Yourself remembered him?”

S U M M A R Y

1. Mankind has done nothing but fail since he was created.
2. Even in the beginning when Adam and Eve lived in perfect environment, they had everything going for them. God gave them everything a human being could ask for: they had the best food, they had a perfect relationship with God and with each other and they had a Bible class everyday with Jesus Christ as their teacher. It was in that environment that they failed by committing the first sin, a sin of disobedience.
3. Adam and Eve had no excuse for this sin. They gave reasons, but in reality they had no excuse.
4. The moment that the man and woman sinned, their human spirits died and they became spiritually dead. The human spirit is the point of contact with God. Without the human spirit man cannot make any contact with God.
5. The moment that the man and woman sinned they recognized a tremendous difference in their thinking. First of all they realized that they were naked, so they gathered some fig leaves in an attempt to cover themselves. This was an attempt to cover their sin.

PRINCIPLE: mankind has been trying to cover sin ever since that time. All forms of human good have been substituted for the fig leaves. The human good often comes in various forms of philosophy and psychology. But in everything man does to cover his sin, He never recognizes God’s solution.

6. The only way God is satisfied in cleansing man from sin is through death. Something must die to pay the penalty of sin.
7. In the account of the sin of Adam and Eve, God did not accept their fig leaves as a cover for their sin, but He killed a few animals and gave Adam and Eve their skins to cover themselves. The death of those animals was a shadow, a picture or illustration of the death of Jesus Christ on the cross many centuries later.

8. It must be noted here that it was not the physical death of Jesus Christ, or His physical blood that paid the price for our salvation. It was His substitutionary spiritual death on the cross that satisfied the Father. On the cross Jesus said **“it is finished”** while He was still alive physically (John 19:30). He had finished being judged for all human sins committed during time.
9. Therefore, since man is totally depraved there is nothing he can do to please God in any way, shape or form. If man is going to be delivered and be saved, it must come from God and Him alone. This is what grace is all about. God found a way for man to live with Him in heaven, and that way is only through man’s faith, trust or confidence in the work of Jesus Christ on the cross. In Acts 4:12 with reference to the Lord Jesus Christ it says, **Salvation is found in no one else, for there is no other name under heaven given to men by which we must be saved.** (NIV)

Literally, “What is mankind that You Yourself remember him?”

PRINCIPLE: God remembered you and me billions of years ago. He remembered us and provided salvation for us. He also remembered us and provided everything we would ever need in this life and in eternity. He did all this in grace which means that none of us deserves anything that God has provided for us.

Literally, “But someone has testified somewhere, saying, ‘What is mankind, that You Yourself remember him?’”

Or the son of man - ἡ υἱὸς ἀνθρώπου – E HUIOS ANTHROPOU. This is a reference to the descendants of Adam. God could have destroyed Adam and Eve because of their sin which would have resulted in destroying the entire human race. But He didn’t! In the descendants of Adam God remembers all members of the human race. Remember that the entire progeny of Adam are spiritually dead and separated from God from the point of physical birth. But God in His grace found a way to save all people who place their faith in Jesus Christ. John 3:16, **For God so loved the world that he gave his one and only Son that whoever believes in him shall not perish but have eternal life.** (NIV) The word “believes” is the present active participle of the verb πιστεύω – PISTEUO. Means “to believe in, to trust in, to have full confidence in.”

John 3:36, **Whoever believes in the Son has eternal life, but whoever rejects the Son will not see life, for God’s wrath remains on him.** (NIV) The word “believe” is another present active participle meaning “to believe in, to trust in, to have full confidence in.”

Literally, But someone has testified somewhere, saying, ‘What is mankind, that You Yourself remember him?’”

That thou visitest him? - ὅτι ἐπισκέπτῃ αὐτόν - HOTI EPISKEPTE OUTON. The English translation is very misleading.

The first word in the Greek is the conjunction HOTI correctly translated “that.” Following HOTI is the present middle indicative second person singular of the verb ἐπισκέπτομαι – EPISKEPTOMAI. Means “to come to the aid of someone, to help someone.” This word was used in the ancient world for doctors helping those who were ill.

PRESENT TENSE (customary) emphasizing that which habitually occurs. God habitually comes to the aid of mankind.

MIDDLE VOICE (reflexive) which directs the action back to the subject in a reflexive manner. In other words, God Himself provides aid to mankind.

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative) emphasizing the absolute dogmatic reality of God providing aid to the human race.

Literally, “Or the son of man that You Yourself come to his aid.”

God Himself comes to the aid of all members of the human race. God came to your aid and my aid. First at the cross, and since then He has continually made provision for all our needs, physically as well as spiritually.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 6: “But someone has testified somewhere, saying ‘What is mankind that You Yourself remember him? Or the descendants of man that You yourself continually come to their aid?’”

Hebrews 2:7;

Vs 7: **Thou madest him a little lower than the angels; thou crownedst him with glory and honor, and didst set him over the works of thy hands:** (KJV)

Thou madest him a little lower than the angels - There are only three Greek words here: ἡλάττωσας αὐτὸν βραχύ - ELATTOSAS AUTON BRACHU.

Thou madest lower - ἡλάττωσας - ELATTOSAS. First aorist active indicative second person singular of ἐλαττώω - ELATTOO. Means "to be made inferior." The aorist tense speaks of a point of time when the Lord created Adam.

Him - αὐτὸν - AUTON. Accusative masculine singular of the intensive pronoun αὐτός - AUTOS referring to Adam in the Garden of Eden.

Little - βραχύ - BRACHU. Accusative neuter singular of βραχύς - BRACHUS. Means "brief, or short." This is the accusative of the extent of time.

Literally, "You made him inferior to the angels for a brief time."

Summary

1. The angelic races are superior by creation to mankind. Man is confined to the earth and its atmosphere; angels on the other hand are not confined to any specific location. They are able to come and go at will. They can go to heaven, they can come to the earth or they can spend time on any planet in between. Not only that, but man's only direct communication with God has been that which he had with Jesus while He was on the earth. Angels have continual access to God.

Angels are spirit beings; man is made out of the dust of the earth. After Satan rebelled, the faithful angels were secured in holiness forever. After Adam rebelled, all men were cursed with him. In Adam all died (I Cor 15:22). At the time of their creation all angels were perfect, but man was only innocent, but even in his innocence man had the choice to sin or not to sin. Still more importantly, angels were never subject to death as man was. God's first words to Adam in the Garden of Eden were, **And the Lord God commanded the man, "You are free to eat from any tree in the garden; (17) but you must not eat from the tree of knowledge of good and evil, for when you eat of it you will surely die."** (Gen 2:16-17) (NIV)

In the coming kingdom things will be much different. At that time, Daniel 7:18, **But the saints of the Most High will receive the kingdom and will possess it forever—yes, for ever and ever.** (NIV)

Daniel 7:27, **Then the sovereignty, power and greatness of the kingdoms under the whole heaven will be handed over to the saints, the people of the Most High. His kingdom will be an everlasting kingdom, and all rulers will worship and obey him.** (NIV)

In the future the saints will not only inherit a perfect kingdom, but an eternal kingdom, in which they, not angels, will rule. Rev 3:21 says, **To him who overcomes, I will give the right to sit with me on my throne, just as I overcame and sat down with my Father on his throne.** (NIV) Who is the one who overcomes? I John 5:4-5 tells us, **For everyone born of God overcomes the world. This is the victory that has overcome the world, even our faith. (5) Who is it that overcomes the world? Only those who believe that Jesus is the Son of God.** (NIV)

Ephesians 1:18-21 tells us, **I pray also that the eyes of your heart may be enlightened in order that you may know the hope to which he has called you, the riches of his glorious inheritance in the saints, (19) and his incomparably great power for us who believe. That power is like the working of his mighty strength, (20) which he exerted in Christ when he raised him from the dead and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly realms, (21) far above all rule and authority, power and dominion, not only in the present age but also in the one to come.** (NIV) Therefore, if Jesus Christ reigns over angels in the coming kingdom, and we rule and reign with Him (II Tim 2:12), then we, too, will reign over angels.

The angels were initially created superior to mankind, or you could say, man was created inferior to angels for a brief time.

2. Only at the point of salvation does man begin to become superior to angels, and that superiority is positional. In other words, as believers in Jesus Christ we are placed into union with Christ and that is our position. In our position we are superior to all the angels because Christ is superior to all the angels and we are in Him.
3. While angels are superior to mankind by creation they have one area in common with man, and that is in the area of free will or volition.

4. It is the free will of mankind which plays such an important part in resolving the Angelic Conflict. This free will function on the part of mankind is a non meritorious function.
5. The free will of the humanity of Jesus Christ took Him to the cross, and that is where Satan's power was greatly diminished. The cross is the basis for our Lord's power and for His authority to remove Satan as the ruler of the world and for Him to set up His Millennial Kingdom.
6. The free will of man expresses in a non meritorious manner that which Satan intensely hates, and that is doing the will of God, responding to the grace of God from one's own free will. That is especially true because of the universal priesthood of the believer in this age, which will be the subject of future chapters in the book of Hebrews.
7. In the future believing mankind will possess resurrection bodies like that of our Lord, and at that time he will be physically superior to all of the angels.

Literally, "For a brief time you yourself made him (Adam) inferior to angels."

Thou crownedst - ἐστεφάνωσας - ESTEPHANOSAS. First aorist active indicative second person singular of the verb στεφανόω - STEPHANOO. Means "to crown a victor at one of the athletic games." STEPHANOO refers to a victor's crown. Another Greek word for crown is διάδημα - DIADEMA, which refers to "a crown of ruling authority." This word was used for "a king's crown, or the crown of a sovereign." In our passage the STEPHANOO crown refers to a "victor's crown," but it also is used for a king who receives delegated authority to rule.

Him - αὐτόν - AUTON. Accusative masculine singular of αὐτός - AUTOS. This is a reflexive pronoun used as a personal pronoun referring to Adam in the Garden of Eden. When Adam was created he was "crowned ruler of the world." He was given delegated authority from the Lord to rule.

Literally, "You have crowned him."

With glory and honour - δόξη καὶ τιμῇ - DOXA KAI TIME.

With glory - δόξη - DOXA. Dative of possession of δόξα - DOXA.

And honour - καὶ τιμῇ - KAI TIME. First of all we have the connective particle KAI translated "and," plus the dative of possession of τιμή - TIME.

The dative of possession tells us that this glory belongs to God, and He crowned Adam with it.

Adam was given both the glory and honor of God when he was created. He was not only created as a man on this earth but he was also created the ruler of this earth. That is why Adam, even before the woman was created, spent a lot of time with the Lord Jesus Christ and given the task of naming all of the animals. This was his kingdom and it was his responsibility, he was the ruler. Therefore he had the privilege of naming all of the animals in his kingdom. He was the ruler of the world.

It is very important to understand that Adam lost all of these things. He lost his crown of glory and honor. He lost those things because of his first sin and his subsequent fall, and as the result, Satan became the ruler of the world in Adam's place. Satan superseded Adam as the ruler of the world and he has been ruling the world ever since.

Literally, "For a brief time You made him inferior to angels, You crowned him with Your glory and honor."

The first Adam lost the ruling sovereignty of the world to Satan, but Jesus Christ, the last Adam will regain it again. In all of human history there will only be two men who rule the world: the first Adam during the period of innocence, and Jesus Christ, the last Adam at His Second Advent when He sets up His Millennial Kingdom. In between these two men, Satan, an angel, will rule the world.

And did set him over the works of your hands - Not in the Greek text.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 7: "You made him (Adam) inferior to angels for a brief time, and you crowned him with your glory and honor."

Hebrews 2:8;

Vs 8: **Thou has put all things in subjection under his feet. For in that he put all in subjection under him, he left nothing that is not put under him. But now we see not yet all things put under him. (KJV)**

Thou - This refers to God the Father under the principle of grace. Technically there is no pronoun in the Greek text, this is actually taken from the suffix of the verb ὑποτάσσω – HUPOTASSO translated “has put in subjection.”

Thou has put in subjection - ὑπέταξας – HUPETAXAS. First aorist active indicative second person singular of ὑποτάσσω – HUPOTASSO. Means “to subordinate.”

Literally, “You have subordinated.”

All things - πάντα – PANTA. Accusative neuter plural of πᾶς – PAS meaning “all.” PAS is in the emphatic position in the Greek, which means that it is the first word in the Greek sentence. The word “things” is a translation of the neuter gender of the word PAS.

Literally, “Emphatically, all things You have subordinated.”

Under - ὑποκάτω – HUPOKATO. This is a compound verb used as a preposition. This is known as an improperpreposition.

HUPO - meaning “under.”

KATO - meaning “down.”

Therefore, HUPOKATO meaning “down under or underneath.”

His feet - ποδῶν αὐτοῦ – PODON AUTOU. First of all we have the genitive plural of the noun πούς – POUS meaning “feet.” With this we have the genitive masculine singular of the intensive pronoun αὐτός – AUTOS correctly translated “his.”

Literally, “Emphatically, all things you have subordinated underneath His feet.”

In the ancient world the king's throne was always elevated and everyone who came into his presence bowed down before him and sometimes they even kissed his feet. His subjects, therefore, were often spoken of as being “under his feet.” When Adam, the federal head of the human race was created, God not only gave him ruling authority, but His own glory and honor.

God actually placed all things **“underneath his feet.”** Adam was the absolute ruler and authority in all of the world.

For in that he put all in subjection under him, he left nothing that is not put under him - This is simply a commentary explaining in a little more detail the previous phrase of this verse.

For in that - ἐν τῷ γὰρ - EN TO GAR. First of all we have the preposition EN in the locative case, then we have the definite article TO, and then the particle GAR used as a conjunction.

For - γὰρ - GAR. This is the explanatory use of the conjunction GAR which introduces additional explanation regarding the previous phrase of this verse. “You have put all things in subjection under his feet, that is to say, ‘nothing is excluded.’”

Literally, “For in.” There is no word for “that” in the Greek text.

He put all in subjection under him -

He put in subjection under - ὑποτάξαι - HUPOTAXAI. First aorist active infinitive of ὑποτάσσω - HUPOTASSO. Means, “to subordinate.”

Literally, “For in subjecting” or “For in subordinating.”

Him - αὐτῷ - AUTO. Dative masculine singular of the intensive pronoun αὐτός - AUTOS. Literally, “To him.”

All - τὰ πάντα - TA PANTA. First of all we have the definite article, which is used to identify the adjective. With this we have the accusative neuter plural of the adjective πᾶς - PAS. With the neuter gender it can be translated “all things.”

Literally, “For in subordinating all things to him.”

He left nothing -

He left - ἀφῆκεν - APHEKEN. First aorist active indicative third person singular of ἀφίημι - APHIEMI. Means, “to omit, to leave out.”

Nothing - οὐδέν - OUDEN. Accusative neuter singular of οὐδεὶς - OUDEIS. Means, “not one thing.”

Literally, “He omitted not one thing.”

That is not put under him - αὐτῷ ἀνυπότακτον - AUTO ANUPOTAKTON. First of all we have the intensive pronoun AUTOS translated “him.” Next we have the accusative neuter singular of ἀνυπότακτος - ANUPOTAKTOS. Means, “not subjected, not made subordinate, insubordinate.”

Literally, “For in subordinating all things to him, He omitted nothing that is not subordinated to him.”

SUMMARY

1. This does not refer to Jesus Christ, this refers to man. Initially it referred to Adam, but generally to all mankind.
2. Man was designed by God to rule and reign. Man was to have dominion. Man was to have authority. Man was designed by God to be the king of the earth, to be the final authority of all things on the earth.
3. Man was created and placed on the earth as an inferior race compared to angels. In this creation God placed all the ruling authority under the feet of man, and there wasn't anything that was not placed under man's authority.
4. Therefore, when Satan and the fallen angels looked at man in the Garden of Eden they saw a creature that was inferior to them, yet had been given more authority than had been given to them.
5. God knew that man's position as being inferior to angels was only temporary, because He was going to take this inferior race of mankind and raise it higher than the angels, and make it superior to the angels.
6. God did this to show Satan, the fallen angels and the demons that an inferior race of creatures would decide to follow God. And in so doing God would show the angels that He was totally justified in condemning Satan for his rebellion. In other words, God created man to resolve (solve, end or to decide) the Angelic Conflict. This concept will be explained and developed in greater detail in a later lesson.
7. Therefore, man will resolve, or solve the Angelic Conflict, but it was not the first Adam who would succeed, it would be the last Adam,

Jesus Christ. So man will end the Angelic Conflict, and man will end it in victory. But the man who will do it is Jesus Christ. This is why the humanity of Jesus Christ is so important.

Literally, “Emphatically, You (God the Father) subordinated all things underneath his feet. For in subordinating all things to him He omitted nothing that was not subordinated to him.”

Everything was subordinated to Adam in the initial creation. Everything was placed under the authority of Adam: ruling power and authority over all things on the earth. All that which was given to Adam was to become the inheritance to all the descendants of Adam, all mankind. But Adam gave it all away to an angel, Satan. And today man does not have the final authority on the earth, an angel does. God only intervenes to make sure His plan is carried out. Other than that, Satan has complete ruling power and authority on the earth today. In II Corinthians 4:4 it says that Satan is **The god of this age**, and as such **he has blinded the minds of unbelievers, so that they cannot see the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ.....** (NIV) In Ephesians 2:2 it says that Satan is **the ruler of the kingdom of the air....** (NIV) the atmosphere around the earth. In John 12:31 and John 14:30 Satan is called **the prince (ruler) of this world....** (NIV) Therefore, the Bible is very clear when it tells us that Satan is the ruler of the world today, not man.

Literally, “Emphatically, you have subordinated all things underneath his feet. For in subordinating all things to him He omitted nothing that was not subordinated to him.”

But now we see not yet all things put under him -

But now - νῦν δὲ – NUN DE. This sets up a dramatic contrast. The contrast of what Adam and mankind was given at creation and what mankind has today in the present.

We see - ὁρῶμεν – HOROMEN. Present active indicative first person plural of ὁράω – HORAIO. Means, “to see, to understand.” This refers to a panoramic view or perception. It refers to seeing with the mind as well as with the physical eyes. That is why the word “understand” is one of the definitions.

Literally, “But now we see.”

Not yet - οὐπω – OUPO. Means “not yet.”

All things - τὰ πάντα – TA PANTA. First of all we have the definite article ὁ – HO, plus the accusative neuter plural of the adjective πᾶς – PAS meaning “all.” With the neuter gender it can be translated “all things.”

Put under him - ὑποτεταγμένα – HUPOTETAGMENA. Perfect passive participle accusative neuter plural of ὑποτάσσω – HUPOTASSO. Means, “to subordinate, to bring under subjection.”

Literally, “But now we see not yet all things having been subordinated to him.”

Summary

1. The phrase “subordinated to him” refers to mankind, but in the next verse of our passage we will see that this also refers to Jesus Christ, who is not only a man, but He is a man who has been **“exalted to the highest place and given a name that is above every name.”** (Phil 2:9; NIV)
2. Jesus Christ as a man is not only exalted and enthroned at the right hand of God the Father, but He has been appointed the Heir of all things in heaven and on earth. Hebrews 1:2.
3. Even though Jesus Christ has been exalted and enthroned, and has been appointed the Heir of all things, He has not received His inheritance, and He has not taken the ruling authority of the earth, yet. All of that is still future. Hebrews 2:8, **“.....But now we see not yet all things subordinated to him.”**
4. During the Church Age the Angelic Conflict continues until it reaches its intensified stage.
5. During both the Church Age and the Tribulation period (the last seven years of the Jewish Age, just before the Second Advent) there will be war both in the angelic realm and the human realm. War will never be abolished until Jesus Christ receives His inheritance and takes the ruling authority of the earth away from Satan. Therefore, war will continue to rage until Jesus Christ sets up His kingdom. He alone will put an end to war and will establish a universal peace on the earth.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 8: “All things you (God the Father) have subordinated underneath his feet (Adam originally, then all mankind). For in subordinating all things to him (mankind) He (God the Father) omitted nothing

that was not subordinated to him (mankind). But now, we see not yet all things having been subordinated to him.”

Summary Principles of Verse Eight

1. Man’s revealed destiny was restricted by the sin of Adam and Eve. When Adam and Eve disobeyed God and ate of the forbidden fruit they died immediately, spiritually, not physically. Because of spiritual death things would never be the same again. Adam and Eve did accept Christ as Savior, but they still had to contend with the sin nature within themselves and eventually face physical death. Physical death was not the result of eating the forbidden fruit, physical death was the result of spiritual death.
2. In Genesis 3:16 God said to Eve, **“I will greatly increase your pain in childbearing; with pain you will give birth to children. Your desire will be for your husband, and he will rule over you.”** (NIV) The increased pain in childbirth and the subjection of the wife to her husband are direct results of the sin in the Garden of Eden.
3. In Genesis 3:17-19 God said to Adam, **“Because you listened to your wife and ate from the tree about which I commanded you, ‘You must not eat of it,’ ‘Cursed is the ground because of you; through painful toil you will eat of it all the days of your life. (18) It will produce thorns and thistles for you, and you will eat the plants of the field. (19) By the sweat of your brow you will eat your food until you return to the ground, since from it you were taken; for dust you are and to dust you will return.”** (NIV) The last phrase is the first reference to physical death. I don’t think that Adam and Eve really understood it until Cain killed Abel and they saw his lifeless body lying on the ground.
4. When Adam sinned, the earth became corrupted. Adam immediately lost his kingdom, his ruling authority and his crown. Therefore, because he lost these things, we do not see the earth subject to man. However, originally the earth was subject to man and it supplied all his needs without him having to do anything. He had only to accept and enjoy the earth as it provided for him. Then, tempted by Satan through Eve, man sinned and his tempter usurped the kingdom, the ruling authority and the crown. At that time there was a tremendous change. Common sense shows us that we do not rule this world; it rules us. Even with all our modern technology we must constantly fight against the earth for our survival. Whether it be floods, droughts, tornadoes, hurricanes, insects, bacteria or anything that

is out to get us. In order for man to survive on this earth, he must work.

5. I John 5:19, **We know that we are children of God, and that the whole world is under the control of the wicked one.** (NIV) This refers to Satan. He rules the earth, which in turn rules sinful man. When man lost his kingdom, ruling authority and his crown, he also lost mastery of himself as well as that of the earth. Man was totally sinful, and had become a slave to his sinful nature. For thousands of years human beings have been dying and now man in his scientific investigations discovers that the earth is dying right along with mankind.
6. The animal kingdom also became effected by man's sin and fallen condition. Animals are now subservient to man only out of fear. Much of the animal kingdom is no longer able to be tamed at all. Even after the man and woman sinned, animals were not effected until after the great flood in the time of Noah. All animals remained tame and harmless during the Antediluvian Civilization. But after the flood everything changed. Gen 9:1-3, **Then God blessed Noah and his sons, saying to them, "Be fruitful and increase in number and fill the earth. (2) THE FEAR AND DREAD OF YOU WILL FALL UPON ALL THE BEASTS OF THE EARTH AND ALL THE BIRDS OF THE AIR, UPON EVERY CREATURE, AND UPON ALL THE FISH OF THE SEA; they are given into your hands. (3) Everything that lives and moves will be food for you. Just as I gave you the green plants, I now give you everything.** (NIV: Emphasis provided by the author)
7. Amazingly, the earth itself knows its own condition. Romans 8:19-22, **The creation waits in eager expectation for the sons of God to be revealed. (20) For the creation was subjected to frustration, not by its own choice, but by the will of the one who subjected it,** (God subjected the earth to this curse in order that man might continually have trouble, and through this trouble he would seek out God and secure salvation in Jesus Christ). But when the new kingdom begins, (21).....**the creation itself will be liberated from its bondage to decay and brought into the glorious freedom of the children of God. (22) We know that the whole creation has been groaning as in the pains of childbirth right up to the present time.** (NIV) The earth, aware of its curse that came from Adam's fall, is groaning for the day that

the sons of God are revealed in the kingdom, for the earth knows that it too will be liberated from corruption.

8. In the meantime, man is subject to the earth. He plants but he is not sure who will reap. He builds cities, houses, dams and monuments, but they are subject to destruction by lightning, earthquakes, floods, fire, erosion or simple aging. Man lives in jeopardy every minute of every hour of every day. No one knows when an accident may injure him, paralyze him for life or kill him. No one knows when a heart attack will occur. No one knows when he will drop over dead. Hospitals, doctors, medicines, pesticides, insurance companies, fire and police departments and funeral homes all bear the testimony to the cursed earth and that man is not in control of much of anything.
9. No wonder creation groans. God did not intend it to be this way; but it will continue for a little while. In God's timetable, someday, in the coming civilization when the kingdom comes, hospitals will be closed, doctors will be out of business and the violence of nature will disappear. The crops and the trees will no longer be infested. The game of politics will be over and wars will cease. Redeemed man will reign with the Lord Jesus Christ. The day is coming when, in the wonderful plan of God, the kingdom, ruling authority and the crown that man lost will be given to him again. God's redeemed ones, His children, will never again be subject to death. They will be like the angels (Luke 20:26). In the kingdom they will, in fact, rule over angels.

Hebrews 2:9;

Vs 9: **But we see Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels for the suffering of death, crowned with glory and honour; that he by the grace of God should taste death for every man. (KJV)**

I want you to notice the contrast between verse 8 and verse 9. Verse 8 ends by saying that “we see not all things having been subordinated to him (man).” Then verse 9 begins by saying “**But we see Jesus.**” In other words, in all of man’s trouble, pressures and sufferings of life there is hope. And that hope rests in another member of the human race, the God-Man, Jesus Christ. He is the only hope for mankind. He is the One who will restore the kingdom, the ruling authority and the crown of mankind in ruling the earth. He is the One who will dethrone Satan and cast him off of the earth and into prison.

But we see Jesus - The English word order does not follow the Greek order. I am going to take the English word order and explain each word from the Greek, then put it all together. It might be a little confusing at first, but when we get it completed it will sound much better.

But - δὲ – DE. Conjunctive particle used to set up the contrast between Adam and Jesus.

There is a word in the Greek that is not brought out in the English, τὸν – TON. This is a definite article, but used as a pronoun. It should be translated, “But the One.”

We see - βλέπομεν – BLEPOMEN. Present active indicative first person plural of βλέπω – BLEPO. Means “to see, the glance of the eye causing someone to see something of importance.”

There is another Greek word for “seeing,” it is ὁράω – HORAIO. Means “to have perception and understanding as a result of seeing.” You see something, you analyze it, you understand it. HORAIO was used in the previous verse. It was used to give you the understanding that man was given ruling authority over the earth, but that he gave it over to Satan. You understand that Satan rules the earth today and therefore you make application. You understand that by trying to improve the environment of this earth you are working for Satan, by going out and marching for world peace you are working for Satan, by going out and marching for pro-life causes you are working for Satan. In fact, you understand that any type of

Christian activism is working for Satan; Christian activism is designed to make the world a better place, and that is not our job as Christians.

When you can truly understand the difference between the time in which we live and the time in which Jesus Christ will rule, you can make correct application of the Scripture you know.

Therefore the word BLEPO means “to see something important.” HORAIO means “to understand an issue and make the proper application.

BLEPO is used in verse 9 because “that which is something important” is Jesus Christ. He is the only celebrity for the believer. He is not only a celebrity in the Church Age, but for the believer He is our High Priest as we are a kingdom of priests.

HORAIO was used in the previous verse for “we see (HORAIO) not yet, all things having been subordinated to him.” In other words, we see and understand the system, we perceive through our knowledge of the Word of God that all things are not subordinated to man at the present time.

However, even though we live in the time of rebellion against the God of the Bible, even though we live in the devil’s kingdom, “We see (BLEPO) Jesus.”

There is only one problem with this word BLEPO, it is out of place in the English word order. It doesn’t come up yet. “We see Jesus” is the concept, but it is found later in the Greek text.

BLEPO is the present active indicative.

PRESENT TENSE linear aktionsart, referring to continuous action in present time. We keep on seeing this through our knowledge of the Word of God.

ACTIVE VOICE: the subject produces the action of the verb. The believer produces the action of seeing this through his application of the Word of God.

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative). The mood of reality. This refers to the absolute reality of the fact that the believer with Bible doctrine in his soul can begin to pick out what is important in life and to emphasize that. A believer who does not possess a lot of Biblical information does not know what is really important. In other words, the believer who does not have very much knowledge and understanding of the Word of God will emphasize things that people do or don’t do. What people do and don’t do is not that important. A believer who has a greater knowledge and understanding of the

Word of God will emphasize what people think and the attitudes people have. That is truly important.

PRINCIPLE: the only way to have an attitude and thought pattern that is pleasing to God is to possess a lot of Biblical information in your soul.

PRINCIPLE: this verse actually deals with spiritually mature believers or believers who are in the process of advancing to spiritual maturity. Only the believer who is learning the Word of God consistently can see Jesus in the way that He is described in this verse. Jesus can only be seen through the spiritual eyes of those who know and have a clear understanding of the Word of God.

In verse 8 it was what “we did not see,” and in verse 9 it is “what we do see.” But the writer of Hebrews, under the ministry of the Holy Spirit, uses two different verbs for “see” in two different verses: HORAŌ and BLEPO. Here in verse 9 BLEPO refers “to a glance of the eye which emphasizes something of importance.” And that something of importance is the Lord Jesus Christ, the last Adam, resolving the Angelic Conflict. At the same time the last Adam provides eternal salvation for the descendants of the first Adam.

Literally, “But the One we keep on seeing, namely, Jesus.”

Jesus - Ἰησοῦν – IESOUN. Accusative masculine singular of Ἰησοῦς – IESOUS. Means “Savior, Deliverer.” In Acts 7:45 and Hebrews 4:8 this IESOUS is translated by the English word “**Joshua**.” And in the Hebrew Old Testament the word “**Joshua**” was translated into the Greek Old Testament with the word IESOUS. In fact, the word IESOUS (Jesus) was used at least 26 times in the Greek translation of the Old Testament when translating the Hebrew for Joshua.

Jesus was a very common word among the Jews. Even in the time of our Lord’s earthly life there were many others who had the name of Jesus. And to make sure no one misunderstood who they were talking about, the writers of the New Testament would use the phrase “Jesus of Nazareth” or “Jesus, the Son of David” or “Jesus, the carpenter’s son” or “Jesus, the Christ, the Messiah.”

There is something else that should be mentioned about the name Joshua. It is a derivative of the word Jehovah, meaning “the God of salvation.” It is usually translated by the English word “Lord” in our Bibles.

Why is this so important? Because there are things here in Hebrews 2:9 that you would never understand if you weren't made aware of certain words. When the reader of the English translation comes to the phrase "**We see Jesus,**" he would immediately think of the Jesus in the gospels of the New Testament, or the Jesus in the writings of Paul, who is the Savior of mankind. And that is all good, so far as it goes. But that is not all that is brought out here in our passage. You must always keep in mind that the book of Hebrews was written to the Jews. Therefore, a Jewish interpretation is imperative in order to understand what the writer is trying to communicate. So when a Jewish reader of the Greek text of this letter read the word "Jesus," or IESOUS, he would think of something totally different than you and I would. He would think of the Hebrew word, Joshua, which comes from the word Jehovah referring to the God of Israel and emphasizes His delivering power.

I also want you to notice that here in verse 9 of chapter two we see for the first time the writer using the word "Jesus." Throughout the first chapter he uses the words, "Son," "God," and "Lord" to refer to Jesus Christ, but he never mentions Him by name. He goes through an extensive build up of this supreme individual. Throughout chapter one the writer describes Jesus Christ in at least 17 different ways without using the name Jesus.

1. The One whom God has spoken through: 1:2;
2. The One who has been appointed the Heir of all things: 1:2;
3. The One who created everything, even the ages of time themselves: 1:2;
4. The One who is adorned in the majesty and glory of God Himself: 1:3;
5. The One who sustains everything He has created: 1:3;
6. The One who purged (eliminated) all the sins of mankind: 1:3;
7. The One who has been seated and enthroned on the Majesty on High: 1:3;
8. The One who became superior to angels: 1:4;
9. The One who inherited a more prominent name than the angels: 1:4;
10. The One whose name is called "The Son" of God: 1:5;
11. The One whom the angels are commanded to worship: 1:6;
12. The One who is called "God:" 1:8;
13. The One who is the anointed One of God: 1:9;
14. The One who is called "Lord," or Sovereign: 1:10;
15. The One who will live forever: 1:11;
16. The One who has the power and the ability to destroy all of creation: 1:12;
17. The One who will have everything placed under His feet: 1:13;

That is a simple summary of the high points of chapter one. And I want you to notice that the writer of Hebrews establishes Jesus Christ as supreme over all without even using His name.

The writer, under the leading of the Holy Spirit, waits for the right moment to bring out the word “Jesus.” And that right moment is here in verse 9 of chapter two, where He uses the name of Jesus in contrast to the rest of mankind. In other words, “We see not yet everything under subjection to mankind,” but, “We do see Jesus, we do see Joshua, we do see Jehovah, we do see the Savior, we do see the Deliverer.

In the New Testament, the writers, led by the Holy Spirit, used the word Jesus to refer to the humanity of Christ, to refer to His human ancestry, the seed of Adam, the ancestry of Abraham, the line of David.

Therefore the word Jesus is the Hellenized form of the Hebrew word Joshua meaning “Savior, or Deliverer.” Acts 4:12 tells us **Salvation is found in no one else, for there is no other name under heaven given to men by which we must be saved.** (NIV) When you advance in your spiritual life and move closer to spiritual maturity, you will develop in your soul a silent and invisible attitude in which you will begin to consider the Lord Jesus in every aspect of your daily life.

Literally, But the One we keep on seeing, namely, Jesus.”

Who was made a little lower than the angels -

Who was made a little lower - ἡλαττωμένον – ELATTOMENON. Perfect passive participle accusative masculine singular of ἔλαττώω – ELATTOO. Means “to be made inferior.”

PERFECT TENSE: refers to a past completed event that has continuing results. This means that there were permanent results of Jesus Christ becoming a member of the human race. The permanent results deal with the doctrine of the last Adam. The first Adam came and became an absolute failure, the last Adam came and straightened everything out. The first Adam was created to resolve the Angelic Conflict but he was a miserable failure. The last Adam was born to resolve the Angelic Conflict and He will succeed.

PASSIVE VOICE: the subject receives the action of the verb. Jesus Christ received the action of “being made a little lower than the angels.”

PARTICIPLE (circumstantial) denotes the attendant circumstances used to complete the action of the verb. The attendant circumstances include everything that God had to do to keep the human race alive in order for the virgin birth to occur and for Jesus to be born at the right time in human history. This involved everything from destroying the world with a flood because of the angelic infiltration into the human race to corrupt the human bloodline, to protecting the line of Abraham, protecting the Jewish race and protecting the line of David. Both Mary and Joseph were from the bloodline of David. All of this and much more is implied with the circumstantial participle.

PRINCIPLE: if man was created by God to resolve the Angelic Conflict, then man will do it, because God decreed it. But the man who will do it will not be the first Adam, who was a failure. It will be the last Adam, Jesus Christ. That is the reason why Jesus could not come as an angel. He had to come as a man to resolve the Angelic Conflict.

This is what the phrase refers to in our passage, “having been made inferior to angels.” Jesus Christ as God is inferior to no one, so you can see that the writer is talking about the humanity of Jesus Christ. The word “Jesus” all by itself is used to refer to the humanity of Jesus Christ.

Literally, “But the One we see, namely, Jesus, having been made inferior.”

Than the angels - παρ’ ἀγγέλους – PAR AGGELOUS. First of all we have the preposition παρά – PARA plus the accusative masculine plural of ἄγγελος –AGGELOS meaning “angels,” and is preceded by a comparative adverb. This should be translated “to angels.”

Literally, “But the One we see, namely, Jesus, having been made inferior to angels.”

The word “**inferior**” is βραχύ – BRACHU. The accusative of the adjective. βραχύς – BRACHUS. This is the accusative of the extent of time. In its accusative form it becomes an adverb and is used for the incarnation. In other words, “Jesus was made inferior to angels for a brief time,” the period of the incarnation.

Literally, “But the One we see, namely, Jesus, having been made inferior to angels for a brief time.”

For the suffering of death -

For the suffering - διὰ τὸ πάθημα – DIA TO PATHEMA. First of all we have the preposition DIA, plus the accusative singular of πάθημα – PATHEMA, referring to the suffering of the cross only. Not the suffering He endured at the hands of men, but the suffering He endured at the hand of God in being judged for our sins.

Literally, “Because of the suffering.”

We all know from the Scriptures that our Lord endured great and intense physical suffering before He even got to the cross, then He endured great physical suffering on the cross. But that is not what is being taught here.

The next word describes and explains the type of suffering the writer is referring to.

Of death - τοῦ θανάτου – TOU THANATOU. First of all we have the genitive masculine singular of the definite article ὁ – HO used to emphasize the identity of the noun. Next we have the genitive masculine singular of the noun θάνατος – THANATOS. The genitive singular is used as a qualifying concept here. THANATOS is used here to refer to the substitutionary spiritual death of Jesus Christ on the cross in bearing our sins. This also is a genitive of description. This describes the suffering of Jesus Christ as being “a substitutionary spiritual death.”

The Greeks had another word translated death, νεκρός – NEKROS, referring to physical death. NEKROS is never used with reference to our Lord’s substitutionary death on the cross. It was not the physical death of Jesus Christ that paid for the sins of mankind. It was His substitutionary spiritual death. The literal, physical death, or the literal physical blood of Jesus means nothing in regard to our salvation. His physical death, and His physical blood was like that of any other human being. It could not save a single soul. Whenever you read about the “blood of Christ” in the Bible, the word blood refers to a “representative analogy.” It is not to be taken literally. But when Christians take the blood of Christ literally, it creates a lot of false doctrine. Even in the Old Testament the literal blood of the animal never saved a single soul, it was faith in the Lord and nothing else. The animal blood simply referred to the substitutionary death of the animal for the sins of the individual represented.

Literally, “Because of the suffering of death.”

The “death” refers to Jesus Christ taking our place on the cross, actually having our sins poured out on Him and having Him judged for them. The penalty of sin is spiritual death, not physical death. Therefore, Jesus Christ suffered a substitutionary spiritual death in our place.

Romans 6:23 says, **“The wages of sin is death.”** The word translated “death” is θάνατος – THANATOS, telling us that this death is “spiritual death.”

Literally, “Because of the suffering of death (spiritual death).”

In the Greek text the next few words that follow the word “death” is “We see Jesus.”

Literally, “Because of the suffering of death, we see Jesus crowned.”

He isn’t crowned yet, but we see Him crowned. We can see it coming. If we know enough Bible doctrine we can see it with the eyes of our souls.

Crowned - ἐστεφανωμένον – ESTEPHANOMENON. Perfect passive participle accusative masculine singular of στεφανόω – STEPHANOO. Means “a victor’s crown, a ruler’s crown of delegated authority.”

PERFECT TENSE: refers to a completed action, therefore it speaks of permanence. Jesus Christ was crowned in the past and He will never lose His crown. He was actually crowned at the point of the divine decrees.

PASSIVE VOICE: the subject receives the action of the verb. Jesus Christ receives the crown of ruling authority from God the Father.

PARTICIPLE (circumstantial) denoting the attendant circumstances involved in completing the action of the verb. God’s plan will keep advancing to the point where the humanity of Jesus Christ is crowned. Jesus is crowned as a man. As God He was always sovereign. But His humanity is crowned. Deity was always in a state of glory and honor, thus in His hypostatic union Jesus Christ is in super glory; glorification in both His deity and His humanity.

Seven Points on the Uniqueness of Jesus Christ

1. The birth of Jesus Christ was unique, He was virgin born.
2. The life of Jesus Christ was unique because He was God and man in one person.
3. The death of Jesus Christ was unique because He died twice on the cross; He died a substitutionary spiritual death to pay for the sins of mankind, then He died physically when His work was finished.
4. The resurrection of Jesus Christ was unique. He was the first human being to be resurrected and to be given a glorified physical body.

5. The ascension was unique. As a human being He penetrated all angelic barriers in getting to heaven.
6. The session of Jesus Christ was unique. Never before was a human being asked to sit at the right hand of God the Father.
7. His coronation will be unique. Jesus Christ in His humanity will receive the ruling authority, the glory and honor of God the Father.

Literally, “Having been crowned with glory and honor.”

With glory - δόξη - DOXE. Dative singular of δόξα - DOXA. Means “glory, praise, honor, majesty, magnificence, radiance.” This a dative of possession in the Greek. Jesus Christ will possess this “glory” as a man. He always possessed it as God, but He will possess this glory as a man when He is crowned in the future.

And honour - καὶ τιμῇ - KAI TIME. First of all we have the connective particle KAI correctly translated “and,” then we have the dative singular of τιμή - TIME. Means “honor, dignity, value.” This is also a dative of possession in the Greek. Jesus Christ will possess this “honor” as a man.

When you put these two words together we see God the Father giving His glory and honor to One person in the future, to Jesus Christ, when He is crowned. He is our celebrity now, He will be the world’s celebrity in the future. The glory and the honor that belongs to God will be given to a man, the man Christ Jesus. This will occur at the Second Advent when Christ returns and sets up His Millennial Kingdom. At that time He will be crowned the king of Israel and the king of the earth. And with that coronation He will receive, as a man, all the glory and honor and dignity that He once possessed only in His deity.

PRINCIPLE: the cross must come before the crown. The High Priesthood of Jesus Christ began at the cross with the offering of Himself. There would be no High Priesthood of Jesus if He took the crown first.

It is time to straighten out the word order in this verse.

Literally, “But the One having been made inferior to angels for a brief time (virgin birth to the resurrection), namely, Jesus, whom we see crowned as victor in glory and honor because of the suffering of death (substitutionary spiritual death).”

S U M M A R Y

1. The devil's kingdom is a kingdom of spiritual death.
2. The devil has the power of spiritual death. He does not have the power of physical death, unless God gives it to him.
3. Every human being is born spiritually dead. He is born into the devil's kingdom. The only way anyone can escape the devil's kingdom of spiritual death is to be "born again," to be born of the Spirit of God. That can only occur when he believes in Jesus Christ as His personal Savior. The moment he believes he is regenerated, and immediately loses his citizenship in the devil's kingdom and receives citizenship in God's kingdom
4. Apart from the work of Jesus Christ on the cross, God would have no kingdom on the earth. Therefore it was on the cross that Jesus Christ paid the penalty of spiritual death so He could purchase for Himself a royal family and a kingdom.

When He returns He will have all kinds of human beings represented in His kingdom on the earth: all of the Old Testament believers, Gentiles as well as the Jews, the Church Age saints, and the tribulational believers who will repopulate the earth during the earthly reign of Jesus Christ. All of these human beings will be born again believers. They will be spiritually alive, and He will be the legitimate ruler because He purchased their salvation at the cross.

5. When Jesus Christ returns He will replace the spiritually dead kingdom of the devil with a spiritually alive kingdom of believers in resurrection bodies.
6. That is why there will be the Baptism of Fire. At the Second Advent, this is the removal of all the spiritually dead people from the earth. Only those who are believers in Jesus Christ will remain on the earth when the Millennial kingdom begins.
7. All of the unsaved individuals living on the earth at the time of Christ's return are spiritually dead and are a part of the devil's spiritually dead kingdom. This means that they cannot live in Christ's spiritually alive kingdom, so they will be thrown into "hell" also called "torment" in Luke 16:23. There they will await their final judgment at the Great White Throne (Revelation 20:11-15). It should also be noted that

Satan will also be thrown off the earth at the Second Advent of our Lord as per Revelation 20:2-3.

8. Jesus Christ's Millennial kingdom will begin with all believers. Some will be in perfect resurrection bodies and some will be in their normal physical bodies. The mortal believers will repopulate the earth during this thousand year period. Some of their offspring will chose not to believe in Christ.
9. This concept is described in the parable of the wheat and the tares in Matthew 13:36-43. The wheat (believers) go into the barn (the kingdom), the tares (unbelievers) are thrown into the fire (hell or torment). This concept is also described in the parable of the good and bad fish in Matthew 13:47-50. The good fish refers to believers who are brought into the kingdom, the bad fish refers to unbelievers who are thrown out. This concept is also described in the parable of the ten virgins of Matthew 25:1-13. The five with oil go into the kingdom, the five without oil are cast out.

PRINCIPLE: every doctrine in the Word of God fits together. One is built upon another, and the more doctrine you know the clearer becomes the picture of the plan of God.

10. Adam, the first man, failed miserably. Satan had no authority or power over him or Eve as long as they obeyed God and remained spiritually alive. But as soon as they sinned they died spiritually and Satan became their ruler, instead of God.

Satan brought temptation to Adam and Eve and, when they accepted it, they became subjects to the king of spiritual death. But then they frustrated Satan's plan when they believed in Jesus Christ and became spiritually alive and became members of God's kingdom.

Literally, "But the One having been made inferior to angels for a brief time, namely, Jesus, whom we see crowned as victor in glory and honor because of the suffering of death (substitutionary spiritual death)."

Jesus Christ had to go to the cross before He could have a kingdom. The cross had to come before the crown. The metamorphosis of the humanity of Jesus Christ describes His victory in the Angelic Conflict and the ultimate triumph of regenerate mankind. First of all, because of the virgin birth Jesus Christ was without a sinful nature. He was also without the imputation of Adam's original sin. Second, Jesus Christ lived an impeccable life, He did

not succumb to any temptation. Third, Jesus Christ died spiritually bearing our sins and providing a regenerate kingdom for Himself. He then died physically because His work was finished. Fourth, the physical body of Jesus Christ went into the tomb and out of that tomb came Jesus with a resurrection body. One member of the human race, the last Adam, became superior in His human body to all of the angels. In His deity, He has always been superior to the angels.

Jesus Christ being “crowned with glory and honor” is the picture of Jesus Christ going from lower than the angels to higher than the angels in His humanity.

There is only One celebrity in the Christian way of life, and that is Jesus Christ. There is only one way that you can recognize the celebrityship of Jesus Christ and that is through a maximum knowledge of Bible doctrine resident in your soul. When you consistently learn Bible doctrine, you will develop within your soul a stability and a confidence that will cause others to wonder and take notice. But until then, you are going to get mixed up and you will be led astray from time to time, as you get your eyes on people. If you stick with the learning of God’s Word you will move on to spiritual maturity where there is great blessing and great happiness in time and eternity.

Once you move into a life of spiritual maturity you will recognize only One celebrity, Jesus Christ, and you will become totally occupied with Him and not with your problems, pressures, sufferings or heartaches.

Literally, “But the One having been made inferior to angels for a brief time, namely, Jesus, who we see crowned as victor in glory and honor because of the suffering of death.”

That - ὅπως – HOPOS. This is not the word that would normally be used. Here we have an adverb used as a conjunction with the subjunctive mood of the verb to introduce a very unusual purpose clause. Therefore, this purpose clause gets fantastic emphasis. Ordinarily you would have the word ἵνα – HINA plus the subjunctive mood to introduce a purpose clause, but here the writer uses HOPOS plus the subjunctive mood. This is a most emphatic and a most unusual construction, and it gives a very special emphasis. The emphasis here is placed on the word “grace.”

He by the grace of God - The word “he” is actually found in the next phrase.

By the grace - χάριτι – CHARITI. Dative instrumental singular of the noun χάρις – CHARIS. Means, “grace, unmerited favor.” The dative instrumental case should be translated “by means of grace.”

Of God - θεοῦ – THEOS. The ablative of source from θεός – THEOS. This should be translated “From God.”

Literally, “We see Jesus, having been crowned with glory and honor, that by means of the grace from God.”

Should taste death for every man - ὑπὲρ παντός γεύσεται θανάτου – HUPER PANTOS GEUSETAI THANATOU.

Should taste - γεύσεται – GEUSETAI. Aorist active subjunctive third person singular of γεύομαι – GEUOMAI. Means “to taste, to experience something.”

AORIST TENSE (constative) which views the action of the verb in its entirety in one point of time. This takes the entire period of time when Jesus was bearing our sins and experiencing substitutionary spiritual death. That period of time was three hours.

ACTIVE VOICE: the subject produces the action of the verb. Jesus, of His own free will, tasted or experienced substitutionary spiritual death.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: the use of the subjunctive mood here is used to introduce a purpose clause. God’s purpose in sending His Son Jesus Christ is directly related to our salvation, blessing and happiness in time and eternity.

Death - θανάτου – THANATOU. Here we have the objective genitive singular of the noun θάνατος – THANATOS. Whenever you have a genitive case used as the object of the verb instead of the usual accusative case, you have great emphasis. This construction emphasizes the type of death that was experienced. It was a substitutionary spiritual death.

This also emphasizes the importance of the cross in breaking the back of Satan in the Angelic Conflict so that our Lord will be able to dethrone him as the ruler of the world in the future. This objective genitive case also tells us that because of the cross we all receive blessings in time while we are living in the devil’s world. The cross not only broke the back of Satan’s power, but the cross is the basis for entering into the plan of God and living in the devil’s world, living in great blessing from God at the same time.

For every man - ὑπὲρ παντός – HUPER PANTOS. First of all we have the preposition HUPER plus the genitive case tells us that HUPER is used as a preposition of substitution. Literally, “On behalf of, or as a substitute

for.” Next we have the genitive masculine singular of the adjective $\pi\alpha\varsigma$ – PAS meaning “all.” There is no word for “man” in the Greek text, the translators actually used the masculine gender of PAS to insert the word “man.” But this can literally read, “As a substitute for all.” This refers to “unlimited atonement.”

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 9: “But the One having been made inferior to angels for a brief time, namely, Jesus, whom we see crowned as victor in glory and honor because of the suffering of death, so that by means of the grace from God He should experience death as a substitute for all.”

Summary Principles

1. Adam and Eve were perfect as they were created. Genesis 1:26.
2. The environment in which Adam and Eve were placed was perfect. Genesis 1:31.
3. In the original state of man at creation, which was perfection, man’s point of contact with God was love. God’s personal love can only be directed toward perfection. His personal love cannot be directed toward any imperfection.
4. There were at least two things Adam and Eve did not have because they were not necessary:
 - A. Justice: Justice was not necessary because everything was perfect.
 - B. Grace: Grace is only for the undeserving. As long as Adam and Eve remained positive toward God they remained perfect and grace was not necessary.
5. Adam and Eve continued to be protected from Satan as long as they remained positive toward God. The two trees in the Garden of Eden represented opposing sides of the Angelic Conflict. Adam and Eve in perfection had free will. Every day they had to choose for God, by eating from the tree of life, or they had to choose for Satan and eat from the tree of knowledge of good and evil. As long as they chose the tree of life they remained in the will of God and under His protective hand. But as soon as they chose the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, they died spiritually and they lost contact with God. At that point God’s blessing and protection was removed.

6. During the earthly reign of Jesus Christ on the earth in the future there will be perfect environment. But that perfect environment will be a lot different than the perfect environment in the Garden of Eden. During the earthly reign of Jesus Christ on the earth people will not have a choice about whom they will serve. Satan, demons and fallen angels will all be imprisoned; Jesus Christ will be the only ruler on the earth. Therefore those unbelievers living during the Millennium will have no choice but to follow the Lord, there will be no other option.

Therefore during the Millennium, salvation as we know it will not be offered to anyone. Salvation will not be offered because there is no choice. Jesus Christ and His government will be the only authority at that time.

Before salvation can be offered there must be more than one system to choose from. During the Millennial kingdom that will not be the case. Satan and his companions will be chained and the Angelic Conflict will be placed on hold for one thousand years.

7. In the Garden of Eden man's contact with God was based on perfect love, but there are at least three things that love cannot do:
 - A. It cannot provide grace.
 - B. It cannot provide eternal life. There is no permanence in a relationship based on love. God's love, like all His other attributes is perfect and eternal. But man in the garden with his free will could change at any moment and become imperfect. So God's love could not guarantee that man would be qualified to live with Him forever.
 - C. It cannot provide eternal security.
8. God's love can only do one thing: it can bless. But it can only bless that which is perfect.
9. After Adam and Eve sinned they were removed From God's personal love and placed under a new system. Since they were no longer perfect they ceased to be objects of the personal love of God. Their new depraved natures demanded something greater than love, so man was placed under the justice of God.
10. After Adam and Eve sinned they became imperfect and therefore the justice of God condemned them.
11. After Adam and Eve were condemned, grace comes into the picture because man is now undeserving.

12. According to verse 8 we do not see man victorious or triumphant. Man is a loser in everything he does. Verse 9 says, “But we do see Jesus” victorious and triumphant. He is the real winner, the One representing man. He is the one who will regain all that Adam lost in the Garden of Eden.
13. In other words, man’s destiny, restricted by sin and rebellion has been recovered by Jesus Christ. In his creation man was given total and complete rulership of the earth. But through his sin and rebellion he lost everything and he gave his ruling authority of the earth to Satan. But God the Father designed a plan whereby man could regain all that was lost plus much more. That plan centers on the man, Jesus Christ. Jesus, as a man, has been given the right to rule all that the Father so desires. Even though it is not a reality today, it is a certain fact for the future. Anyone who desires to be on God’s side must personally believe in Jesus Christ as his personal Savior and in so doing he becomes a joint heir with Jesus Christ in all things, Rom 8:17, **Now if we are children, then we are heirs—heirs of God and co-heirs with Christ....** (NIV)

Therefore the only ones who will regain what Adam lost are the ones who are in Christ. Christ is the key to all of God’s plans. Jesus Christ is the God-Man who will resolve (solve, bring to an end) the Angelic Conflict and He is the man who will rule the world.

14. Spiritual death accompanied by physical death conquered man, but Jesus Christ has conquered death. He conquered spiritual death on the cross by bearing all of the sins of the entire human race and being judged for them, then He conquered physical death through His resurrection.
- I Cor 15:54b-56,”**Death has been swallowed up in victory.**” (quotation from Isaiah 25:8). “**Death**” spoken of here is spiritual death. The words “**swallowed up**” speaks of annihilation. The words “**in victory**” refers to the victory of Jesus Christ on the cross suffering a substitutionary spiritual death for all mankind and bearing the sins of the entire world. (55) “**Where, O death, is your victory? Where, O death, is your sting?**” (Quotation from Hosea 13:14). The spiritual death of all human beings has been neutralized as a condemning power through the work of Jesus Christ on the cross, therefore spiritual death has no condemning power to those who are in Christ. Also, spiritual death has lost its “sting” because the work of Jesus Christ removed its power. (56) **The sting of death is sin, and the power of sin is the law.** The phrase, “**the sting of**

death” refers to spiritual death. The word “**sin**” is in the singular referring to the sinful nature.

The phrase “**the power of sin is the law**” refers to legalism, ritualism and emotionalism which breeds all types of sins. Therefore the strength of the sinful nature is revealed in these three ism’s. This is why the New Testament teaches and emphasizes grace. It is only through grace that we can live the Christian life effectively.

15. The words in verse 9 “for the suffering of death” are associated with the words “crowned with glory and honor.” It was through our Lord’s sufferings and because of them that He was crowned with glory and honor. Our Lord’s ascension, session, exaltation and His resultant superiority over all angels was obtained through His perfect substitutionary work on the cross.

16. The purpose of Jesus Christ coming to the earth as a human being was “**for the suffering of death.**” Jesus Christ became a man for one purpose, and one purpose only: to die! In Matthew 16:21 it says, **From that time on Jesus began to explain to his disciples that he must go to Jerusalem and suffer many things at the hands of the elders, chief priests and teachers of the law, and that he must be killed and on the third day be raised to life.** (NIV) The resurrection of Jesus Christ was simply the revealed demonstration that God had accepted His substitutionary death on the cross. The resurrection was the verification of the work of Jesus Christ on the cross through His substitutionary spiritual death. Romans 1:4, **And who through the Spirit of holiness was declared with power to be the Son of God by his resurrection from the dead: Jesus Christ our Lord.** (NIV)

17. When verse 9 says that “we see Jesus,” that refers to “seeing Him crowned with glory and honor.” Because this was never translated correctly, there have been many false concepts taken from this scripture. In the first place, no one can literally see Jesus today. So this does not refer to any literal vision of the Lord. When this says, “but we see Jesus crowned with glory and honor,” this is referring to the future day when He returns to set up His kingdom and rule the earth with absolute power. But we can only see this today through our knowledge of the Word of God. The more you learn from God’s Word the more you will see and understand the plan of God as it unfolds through the course of time.

18. Jesus Christ tasted death (substitutionary spiritual death) for everyone. This means that He experienced death for everyone including all unbelievers. When the unbeliever stands before God at the Great White Throne Judgment not one sin will ever be mentioned no matter how bad it may have been. Jesus Christ bore them all through His substitutionary spiritual death. The unbeliever will only be judged according to his works or his good deeds (Rev 20:11-15). Those who reject the work of Jesus Christ on their behalf automatically depend upon their own works or deeds to save them. They will find out that their good works aren't enough.

Expanded Translation Verses 1-9

1. Because of this, we should of necessity pay much more attention to the things which we have heard, lest at any time we might drift past them.
2. For if the Word (Bible doctrine) having been communicated through angels became permanent (and it did), and every violation of the law and every act of unwillingness to listen and learn received a just punishment (and it did).
3. By what means shall we escape after having disregarded such a great salvation, which was at first communicated through the Lord (in contrast to angels), and was verified under the authoritative teaching of those having heard.
4. God confirming their witness by additional testimony, both with signs (*special miracles to warn the entire nation of Israel*) and wonders (*special miracles to focus attention on Jesus Christ, the gospel and God's plan of individual salvation*), and by means of various powers (*apostolic use of grace dynamics*) and distributions from the Holy Spirit according to the standard of His own sovereign will.
5. For he has not put under the authority of angels the coming civilization, concerning which we are speaking.
6. But someone has testified somewhere, saying "What is mankind that You Yourself remember him? Or the descendants of man that You yourself continually come to their aid?"
7. You made him (the Last Adam) inferior to angels for a brief time, and you crowned him with your glory and honor.

8. All things you (God the Father) have subordinated underneath his feet (Adam originally, then all mankind). For in subordinating all things to him (mankind) He (God the Father) omitted nothing that was not subordinated to him (mankind). But now, we see not yet all things having been subordinated to him.

9. But the One having been made inferior to angels for a brief time, namely, Jesus, whom we see crowned as victor in glory and honor because of the suffering of death, so that by means of the grace from God He should experience death as a substitute for all.

Hebrews 2:10;

Vs 10: **For it became him, for whom are all things, and by whom are all things, in bringing many sons unto glory, to make the captain of their salvation perfect through sufferings.** (KJV)

Verse 10 describes the completion of the last Adam, Jesus Christ. We are building up to something very important in verses 14-15, but you'll never understand it without a very clear understanding of what is taught in verse ten.

For it became him -

For - γὰρ – GAR. This is the illative use of the particle GAR used to express a “ground or a reason for something.” Here Gar assigns a reason for the previous verse “we see Jesus crowned” because He is the groom, we are the bride (all Church Age believers). He is the High Priest, we are a kingdom of priests, He is the Crown Prince waiting to become the king while He is seated at the right hand of the Father and we are His ambassadors here on the earth at this time.

For it became him - This is a very difficult idiom to communicate in English.

It became - ἔπρεπεν – EPREPEN. Imperfect active indicative third person singular of πρέπω – PREPO. This is an impersonal verb meaning “it is fitting, it is proper, it is right.”

IMPERFECT TENSE is continuous action in past time. This tells us that there was never a time when God wasn't qualified to handle His plan. In other words, at all times the plan of God seems to get a little complicated, but He keeps track of it perfectly. It may seem complicated to us but it is simple to Him. There is no Greek verb to bring this out, so the writer has to go to an idiom. When you use an idiom you have to go to an impersonal verb, and impersonal verbs are designed to establish the qualification of the One who is acting in the verb. Of course the One who is acting in the verb is God the Father, and God the Father has the good sense to know how His plan is operating at all times. He never loses track of it, and it is all going to come out in a perfect way. Therefore, the best translation with this illitative GAR should literally read “For it was fitting,” “For it was proper,” “For it was right.”

This means that what God did through Jesus Christ was consistent with His character. It was consistent with His wisdom. The cross was a masterpiece of wisdom. God solved the problem which no human or angelic mind could have solved.

(1) What He did was consistent with His holiness, for God revealed on the cross His hatred for sin by judging His own perfect Son.

(2) This was consistent with His power, the cross being the greatest display of power ever manifested. It was an even greater display than His creation of the heavens and the earth. That is why the seventh day or the sabbath was abolished as a day of worship and Sunday, known as the Lord's day, became the day of assembling together as believers to be taught in the Word of God. Sunday, the first day of the week, commemorates the resurrection of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the resurrection of our Lord is proof that God was satisfied with the work of Jesus Christ on the cross.

(3) It was consistent with His love, in that He loved the world so much that He gave His only Son for its redemption, John 3:16.

(4) It was consistent with His grace because the work of Jesus Christ was substitutionary. No one can work for salvation, no one can pay for salvation and no one deserves salvation. God freely gives it to all who will believe or trust in His Son Jesus Christ.

(5) Therefore the work of salvation was totally consistent with God's nature. It was entirely "fitting and proper and right" for Him to have done all that He did.

It should be understood that it was not a logical necessity for God to do what He did. It was not an obligation on the part of God to provide salvation for man. The fact that God the Father decreed that salvation would only be through the work of Jesus Christ did not originate with any feelings of obligation or necessity on the part of God, but it originated in the very nature of God. A holy God cannot look upon sin with any degree of allowance. A righteous God cannot but require the justice and judgment demanded by His holy law. A loving and compassionate God cannot but provide the very payment of the penalty which His law demands.

Therefore the writer of the book of Hebrews shows the simple reasonableness of the cross in the plan of God. Since only God can satisfy the demands of God, then only a member of the Godhead could provide the great and simple plan of salvation. God the Father laid out the plan, God the

Son executed the plan and God the Holy Spirit provides the power for the plan to be placed into operation.

Literally, “For it was fitting.”

For him - αὐτῷ – AUTO. The dative instrumental case of αὐτός – AUTOS. This is a very unusual use of the instrumental case. AUTOS is an intensive pronoun and here it is used in the instrumental case.

This use of the instrumental case rejects the intermediate means by which a result is produced and goes directly to the original source producing it. In other words, “**Him**” follows an impersonal verb which indicates the “fitness” or “qualification” of God to handle His plan. God is capable and qualified for handling His plan. This verb is followed by an instrumental of cause. You never expect that. You would expect an accusative or an objective genitive, but when you have an instrumental of cause it is saying in effect, “We just skip all of the intermediaries and we go right back to the source of everything.” God the Father is the source of everything, therefore, don’t get upset or dismayed because He has everything well under control.

We will get upset and become dismayed from time to time when our circumstances or when our nation’s situation seems to reach the catastrophic stage. We may begin to wonder if God is still in control. You will begin to wonder about many things when personal and national disaster comes along and personal setbacks seem to overtake you. But all of these things are designed by God for you in order to test your knowledge of His Word and your application of it.

You must relax in the knowledge that God is still in control of everything. His plan is still on course, He is still qualified. He has not changed anything at all. He has not left anything out and everything will work out perfectly. These are the types of thoughts you should be thinking when you have days of discouragement, bewilderment and even depression. God is still in control, and He has your personal interests in mind.

Therefore this phrase “For it was fitting for Him” is a reference to God the Father as the author of the divine plan, rather than Jesus Christ who is the means of executing the divine plan.

Literally, “For it was fitting for Him.”

For whom are all things -

For whom - δι' ὃν – DI HON. First of all have the preposition DIA plus the accusative singular of ὅς – HOS. DIA plus the accusative case of HOS means “because of whom.”

Are - Not in the Greek text. It was inserted to smooth out the English.

All things - τὰ πάντα – TA PANTA. First of we have the nominative neuter plural of the definite article ὁ – HO, plus the nominative neuter plural of the adjective πᾶς – PAS. Means “all, every, the whole.” It can be translated “the all things.”

God the father who is holding this plan together right now is the same One who began it. God the Father is the author of the divine plan and therefore the original cause of everything. If He was wise enough to get this fantastic plan going, and even though it may appear to have broken down because of negative angelic free will and negative human free will, it hasn't. Neither the negative volition of angels nor the negative volition of man has any effect on the fantastic plan of God. God still has complete control of it, and His plan keeps right on moving down the corridors of time without any serious opposition.

Literally, “Because of whom the all things.”

And by whom are all things -

And by whom - καὶ δι' οὗ – KAI DI HOU. First of all we have the conjunction KAI plus the preposition δία – DIA, plus the genitive masculine singular of ὅς – HOS. This should be translated “And through whom.”

Are - Not in the Greek text. It was inserted to make a smoother English.

All things - τὰ πάντα – TA PANTA. First of all we have the nominative neuter plural of the definite article ὁ – HO, plus the nominative neuter plural of the adjective πᾶς – PAS. Means “all, every, the whole.” It can be translated “the all things.”

This may not sound very smooth in the English but in the Greek this is a very balanced bit of phraseology. This is almost like Classical Greek.

Literally, “For it was fitting (proper) for Him (God the Father), because of whom the all things and through whom the all things.”

“Because of whom” refers to God the Father as the reason and the cause of “all things.”

“Through whom” refers to God the Father as the agent through whom all things came into existence. This is a direct repudiation of the Gnostic view of intermediate agencies between God and His creation.

Paul says in Romans 11:36, **For from him and through him and to him are all things. To him be the glory forever! Amen.** (NIV) The first part of the Greek in Romans 11:36 says ὅτι ἐξ αὐτοῦ καὶ δι’ αὐτοῦ καὶ εἰς αὐτὸν τὰ πάντα – HOTI EX AUTOU KAI DI AUTOU KAI EIS AUTON TA PANTA. Which literally says, “Everything came out of God, by means of God, for God.”

PRINCIPLE: God the Father was both the cause and the agent by whom all things came into existence.

PRINCIPLE: if He can bring all things into existence, He can handle each and very situation, even while the devil, as the ruler of the world, is actively opposing all that God does.

PRINCIPLE: God the Father is the originator of all things. He used the Son as the means of creation (Colossians 1:16). He also used the Son as the means of salvation (Acts 4:12). But the Father is the originating source in the plan. As the originating source God the Father keeps control of everything by never becoming incarnate. God the Father has never appeared to anyone outside the Godhead.

God the Father did not take upon Himself human form. God the Father keeps control of the entire situation at all times. He does not have any connection with humanity or with angels. He is totally and completely neutral. In other words, God the Father does not have angelic or human form, and God the Father has complete control over everything. And these two prepositional phrases (“because of whom” and “through whom”) indicate that he never loses control.

What We Need To Remember!

When you get upset.....God doesn't
 When you get frustrated.....God doesn't
 When you get confused.....God doesn't
 When you get angry.....God doesn't, in fact, God
 doesn't get angry over anything.

God never loses control of anything. He is in perfect control at all times. That should be a very comforting thought for each and every one of us.

Literally, “For it was fitting (proper) for Him (God the Father), because of whom all things continue to exist, and through whom all things came into existence.”

In bringing many sons into glory -

In bringing - ἀγαγόντα – AGAGONTA. Second aorist active participle accusative masculine singular of ἄγω – AGO. Means “to lead, to bring, to drag, to guide.” Since God is in control then He is the “Leader.”

Literally, “Having lead,” or “Having brought.”

Many sons - πολλοὺς υἱοὺς – POLLOUS HUIOUS. First of all we have the adjective πολὺς – POLUS meaning “much or many.” With this we have the accusative masculine plural of the noun υἱός – HUIOS meaning “son, adult son.” These words refer to Church Age believers only. Church Age believers are the only believers in the Bible who are called “sons of God.”

Three Analogies to the Church

1. Christ is the Head of the Church and believers in Him are members of His body. Eph 1:22-23; 2:16; 4:4-5; 5:23; Col 1:18; 1:24.
2. Christ is the High Priest and believers are a kingdom of priests. Heb 7:25; 10:10-14; I Peter 2:5 & 9; Revelation 1:6.
3. Christ is the Groom and believers are the bride under the marriage analogy. II Cor 11:2; Eph 5:25-32; Rev 19:6-8.

Literally, “For it was fitting (proper) for Him (God the Father), because of whom all things continue to exist and through whom all things came into existence, in having brought many sons.”

Unto glory - εἰς δόξαν – EIS DOXAN. Prepositional phrase. Preposition EIS plus the accusative singular meaning “to or toward.” This is a directional preposition. Then we have the accusative singular of δόξα – DOXA. Means “glory, honor, majesty.” This word is the object of the preposition.

Literally, “Having brought many sons to glory.”

We must try to keep in mind what was fitting or proper for God the Father was equally fitting or proper for God the Son. Christ’s suffering as a

substitute for man's sins was consistent with God's loving and gracious nature. "Though all things were both FOR Him and THROUGH Him, He became for a little while lower than the angels in order to bring MANY SONS TO GLORY."

The phrase "Bring many sons to glory" speaks not only of believers as sons but includes also the Son of God Himself, for in verse 9 the writer declares that our Lord was crowned with glory and honor because of His sufferings.

To make the captain of their salvation perfect through sufferings-

To make perfect - τελειῶσαι – TELEIOSAI. Aorist active infinitive of τελειόω – TELEIOO. Means "to execute fully, to be brought to the goal, to reach the end of one's course, to accomplish an objective, to cross the goal line." The goal line or the object referred to here is "operation footstool" whereby the Lord Jesus Christ overthrows Satan and supersedes him as the ruler of the world.

AORIST TENSE (culminative): this views the action of the verb in its entirety but emphasizes the end result of the action. The end results of the sufferings of Jesus Christ will be when Satan is dethroned and Jesus Christ installed as the absolute ruler of the earth.

ACTIVE VOICE: the subject produces the action of the verb. God the Father produces the action as a part of His perfect plan.

INFINITIVE MOOD (mood of purpose): this expresses the Father's purpose and plan.

Literally, "To bring to the objective."

Who is the Father bringing to the objective? He must bring the Crown Prince to the objective first. The objective of the Crown Prince was to go to the cross so that He could have a kingdom.

The captain - τὸν ἀρχηγὸν – TON ARCHEGON. First of all we have the accusative singular of the definite article ὁ – HO. The use of the definite article emphasizes the noun it is used with. The noun is the accusative singular of ἀρχηγός – ARCHEGOS. Means "a chief, a leader, a prince, an author, a pioneer." In Acts 3:15 and 5:31 this word is used both times of Christ and is translated "prince"

In the Greek language this word was used to refer to someone who involves others in his endeavor. For example, it is used of a man who starts and heads a family into which others are born or married. It is used of a man

who founds a city in which others come to live. It was commonly used at that time of a pioneer who blazed a trail for others to follow. The ARCHEGOS never stood at the rear giving orders. He was always out front leading and setting the example. As the supreme ARCHEGOS, Christ is always before us as the perfect leader and perfect example.

Every one of the uses given for this word ARCHEGOS can apply to Jesus Christ in one way or another. He lived in perfect obedience to the Father's plan. And because of His obedience to the Father's plan He became the source of eternal salvation to all those who believe or trust in Him (Heb 5:8-9). By His own obedience He set the perfect pattern for us. He also set the pattern for suffering. I Peter 2:21, **To this you were called, because Christ suffered for you, leaving you an example, that you should follow in his steps.** (NIV)

For most people life becomes most anxious and dreadful at the point of death. That is the point beyond which we cannot go a single step by ourselves. But "the Author of our salvation" promises us that "Because I live, you also will live" (NIV). The world's ultimate question is "Has anyone ever cheated death?" To which the Bible replies, "Yes, Jesus Christ!" The second most important question is, "If He did, did he leave the way open for me?" To which the Bible also replies, "Yes!" He did leave the way open, all we have to do is believe or trust in Him and He will lead us from the life we now know, through physical death, to the other side where we will be face to face with Him (II Cor 5:8;).

As the Pioneer of redemption He blazed the trail through death and resurrection. He said, **..."I am the resurrection and the life. He who believes in me will live, even though he dies; (26) and whoever lives and believes in me will never die....."** (John 11:25-26, NIV). God made the humanity of Jesus Christ lower than the angels for a brief time so that He could come down to us, be our ARCHEGOS, our spiritual Pioneer, our spiritual Leader, our spiritual Prince and bring us to the Father.

In verse 10 ARCHEGOS refers to the One who is going to be the King. ARCHEGOS is made up two words: ARCHE, meaning "prince, the first, the highest, the head." Plus AGO meaning "leader."

Therefore here in verse 10 ARCHEGOS should be translated "Prince leader or Crown Prince."

Literally, “To bring to the objective the Prince Leader (the Crown Prince) of their salvation.”

Of their salvation - τῆς σωτηρίας αὐτῶν – TES SOTERIAS AUTON. First of all we have the genitive singular of the definite article ὁ – HO. This is untranslatable, but it is used in the Greek to give emphasis and identify the noun. The noun is the objective genitive singular of σωτηρία – SOTERIA. Means “salvation or deliverance.” Following SOTERIA is the possessive genitive plural of the intensive pronoun αὐτός – AUTOS and is translated “their.” This construction shows great emphasis.

Literally, “To bring to the objective the Prince Leader of their salvation.”

This is actually an emphasis within an emphasis.

Summary Principles

1. Jesus Christ is the Crown Prince and He is a man. Crown Prince means that He is going to rule, and He is going to rule as a man. He is going to supersede an angel. Satan, an angel, will continue to rule this world until the Second Advent of Jesus Christ.
2. After the sin and fall of man in the Garden of Eden God did two things: The first thing was to promise salvation. But how could God protect mankind, how could He protect them from all of the Satanic systems in the devil’s world? How could man have freedom under Satan’s rule? The answer was the second thing God did—He expanded the The Laws of Divine Establishment.
3. Therefore, after the promise of salvation God set up The Laws of Divine Establishment to protect the human race. As long as Satan rules the world, from the fall of man to the Second Advent of Jesus Christ, there will be wars, crime and constant violence. So God, through His laws of divine establishment: free will, marriage, family and nationalism, has set up a system by which Satan can be frustrated in his rulership of the world. God’s plan for the human race is to establish stability within nations by having nations regulate laws regarding marriage (between a man and woman only), the family (the parents are to be the final authority in raising their children), and nationalism, whereby all nations are to organize armies to protect their citizens from invading forces, and to organize an internal police force to protect its citizens from violence and criminal activity within

a nation. When nations follow these laws of divine establishment God will bless those nations in many wonderful ways.

4. The devil is the ruler of this world and as long as he is, God works through the laws of establishment to help and protect individuals. The only exception is when it comes to God's people; in the present time it is the Church Age believers whom God uses to reinforce the laws of establishment and He does this through His people learning His Word in the filling or controlling ministry of the Holy Spirit.

Literally, "To bring to the objective the Prince Leader of their salvation."

Through suffering - διὰ παθημάτων – DIA PATHEMATON. First of all we have the preposition DIA plus the genitive plural of πάθημα – PATHEMA. Means "suffering." Here it refers to all of the pressures and physical sufferings of Christ in getting to the cross. This is in contrast to the previous verse which refers to our Lord's suffering a substitutionary spiritual death in bearing the sins of the world.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 10: "For it was fitting (proper) for Him (God the Father), for whom all things exist and through whom all things came into existence, in bringing many sons to glory and to bring to the objective through sufferings the Prince Leader of their salvation."

Summary of Verse 10

1. The phrase "It was fitting (proper) for Him," tells us that this is what we would expect from such an individual. It was consistent with His character and His essence.
2. The phrase "For whom all things exist and through whom all things came into existence," tells us that God is the originator and the source and the sustainer of all things. We know that He used the Son as the means of creation (Col 1:16), we also know that He used the Son as the means of salvation (Acts 4:12), but here in Hebrews 2:10 we are told that God the Father is the originating source of all these things.
3. The phrase "In bringing many sons to glory," tells us that God the Father was the originator of the plan of salvation. It was He who designed the plan that sent God the Son to the cross to pay the penalty for all the sins of mankind. When Jesus Christ went to the cross and fulfilled God's plan He received God's glory (in His humanity)

and by fulfilling God's plan He made it possible for all who believe in Him to receive that same glory.

4. The phrase "To bring to the objective (to bring to completion) the Prince Leader through suffering," means that God led Jesus Christ through all of the things necessary to consummate His human experience of sorrow and pain through which He had to pass in order to become the Prince Leader of their salvation. In other words, God brought Jesus Christ to the objective He was designed for, a perfect life, a perfect substitutionary spiritual death and a perfect resurrection in order to become the Redeemer and the Savior.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 10: "For it was fitting (proper) for Him (God the Father), for whom all things exist and through whom all things came into existence, in bringing many sons to glory, to bring to the objective through sufferings the Prince Leader of their salvation."

Hebrews 2:11;

Vs 11: **For both he that sanctifieth and they who are sanctified are all of one: for which cause he is not ashamed to call them brethren,**

For - The explanatory use of the particle γὰρ – GAR. This indicates the reason why the Prince Leader, Jesus Christ, was brought to the objective through sufferings.

Both he that sanctifieth and they who are sanctified are all of one

Both - τε – TE. This is a combinatory enclitic particle used either as a link between two things or people, or used as a prefix. It can be translated “and or both.” In our passage it is used as a link referring to both Jesus Christ and those who believe in Him.

He that sanctifieth -

He - ὁ – HO. Definite article used as a pronoun and could be translated “the one.”

That sanctifieth - ἁγιάζων – HAGIAZON. Present active participle nominative masculine plural of ἁγιάζω – HAGIAZO. Means “to set apart, to separate from common condition and use, to dedicate, refers to something holy.” This refers to Jesus Christ as the “Sanctifier.” The Holy Spirit is the agent of sanctification through the baptism of the Spirit, but that is the mechanics. The Sanctifier actually refers to the person into whom every believer is placed at the point of salvation. The moment you were saved, the moment you trusted in Jesus Christ as your Savior you were entered into union with Him. Therefore, He is the “Sanctifier.” In other words, He is the “Head” of the Church.

HAGIAZO means “to set apart,” in this case it means to set apart unto God through union with Jesus Christ. Positional sanctification is the means of providing a bride for the last Adam.

PRINCIPLE: the One doing the sanctifying or the setting apart is the last Adam, Jesus Christ, who is presented in the previous verse as the Prince Leader or the Crown Prince. Jesus Christ is the One who solved the problem that man created by his sin.

When the first Adam went negative to the will of God and sinned, he entered into spiritual death, and it is spiritual death that is the penalty of sin rather than physical death. Adam did not die physically for over 900 years after he died spiritually. It is very important to understand that Adam's physical death was not a direct result from his sin. The only reason that Adam died physically was because God forbid him to eat from the tree of life. Genesis 3:22-24, God said, ".....**He** (Adam, mankind) **must not be allowed to reach out his hand and take also from the tree of life and eat, and live forever**" (23) **So the Lord God banished him from the Garden of Eden to work the ground from which he had been taken. (24) After he drove the man out, he placed on the East side of the Garden of Eden cherubim and a flaming sword flashing back and forth to guard the way to the tree of life.**" (NIV) Man died physically because he was not allowed to eat from the tree of life, he did not die physically because he sinned. He died spiritually because he sinned, and that is the issue being emphasized in Hebrews 2:11.

When Adam went negative to God and sinned, he died spiritually. By this act, he created a kingdom of spiritual death. At the point of man's sin and resultant spiritual death, Satan took over the rulership of the world.

PRINCIPLE: God will not and cannot allow any spiritually dead individuals into His kingdom. But this unchallenged authority of Satan continued until Jesus Christ went to cross and destroyed the power of Satan, his angels and demons by paying the penalty for all mankind through His substitutionary spiritual death on the cross in bearing our sins. Hebrews 2:4b, ".....**so that by his death** (THANATOS referring to substitutionary spiritual death) **he might destroy him who holds the power of death** (THANATOS, spiritual death)—**that is, the devil.**" (NIV) Also see Colossians 2:15, **And having disarmed the powers and authorities, he made a public spectacle of them, triumphing over them by the cross.** (NIV) In this way Jesus Christ purchased a kingdom for Himself. A kingdom of spiritual life. I Cor 15:22 tells us that "**in Adam all die, but in Christ shall all be made alive.**" (NIV) The word for "die" in this verse is the present active indicative of ἀποθνῆσκω – APOTHANESKO, and intensified for the purpose of emphasizing spiritual death. THANATOS refers to spiritual death, not physical death.

Jesus Christ, through His substitutionary spiritual death on the cross, provided for a kingdom of regenerate people. When He was resurrected and ascended He was the only member of the human race to have a resurrection body. He ascended alone. He is the only member of the human race to possess a resurrection body, and He is still alone today.

The next phase of God's plan is to give resurrection bodies to all members of the body of Christ, called His bride. The bride is not a bride until the resurrection and Rapture occurs. In the meantime the bride is called "His body."

PRINCIPLE: when a man marries a woman he is not only marries her soul but her body as well. She is a body when he meets her, and eventually she becomes his body and the two shall be one (Gen 2:24), therefore, his bride. That is the concept being used here: the body is a designation for the Church during the Church Age. But when the Church Age runs its course and is terminated at the Rapture and resurrection of all Church Age believers, the body of Christ will become the bride of Christ and will share a resurrection body as our Lord's resurrection body (Phil 3:20-21; I John 3:2;). At this point our Lord will no longer be alone, He will have His bride which will be "**bone of His bones, and flesh of His flesh,**" similar to that of the first Adam (Gen 2:23).

After the Rapture and resurrection of all Church Age believers, there will be an evaluation of all those who make up the bride of Christ. This is called "**the judgment seat of Christ**" in II Cor 5:10. This is not a judicial judgment but an evaluation of each member of the bride in order to determine the rewards or lack of rewards each one will receive or lose. This evaluation will occur at the same time as the Tribulation period will be in progress on the earth. Then after a seven year period of time Jesus Christ will return to the earth with His bride to take the spiritually dead kingdom of Satan off of the earth, which is called the baptism of fire. All unbelievers will be removed from the earth along with their leader Satan, and the earth will be repopulated with spiritually alive individuals to form the Millennium Kingdom of Jesus Christ.

When Jesus wanted to comfort his disciples just before He died on the cross He said in John 14:1-3, "**Do not let your hearts be troubled. Trust in God; trust also in me. (2) In my Father's house are many rooms; if it were not so, I would have told you. I am going there to prepare a place for you. (3) And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come back and take you to be with me that you also may be where I am.**" (NIV).

Many Christians in the world today do not understand the full significance of the words of Jesus in John 14:1-3. This is because His promise given in that passage was taken from the Jewish marriage customs in Biblical times. Therefore those marriage customs must be explained if we are to really understand what our Lord was actually saying.

Jewish Marriage Customs in Bible times

This summary is a compilation taken from: Manners and Customs of the Bible Lands by Fred H. Wight; Edited notes of Marvin J. Rosenthal and the Pamphlet “Behold the Bride-Groom Comes” by Dr. Renald Showers

1. The first major step in a Jewish marriage was betrothal. Betrothal involved the establishment of a marriage covenant. By the time that Jesus walked on the earth it was usual for such a covenant to be established as the prospective bridegroom took the initiative.
2. In taking the initiative, the prospective bridegroom would travel from his father’s house to the home of the prospective bride. There he would negotiate with the father of the young woman to determine the price (מְהָרָה – MOHAR) that he must pay to purchase his bride.
3. Once the bridegroom paid the purchase price the marriage covenant was established, and the young man and woman were regarded to be husband and wife. From that moment on the bride was declared to be consecrated or sanctified, set apart exclusively for her bridegroom.
4. As a symbol of the covenant relationship that had been established the bride and the groom would drink from a cup of wine over which a betrothal had been pronounced.
5. After the marriage covenant had been established the groom would leave the home of the bride and return to his father’s house. There he would remain separate from his bride for a period of twelve months. This period of separation afforded the bride time to gather her trousseau and to prepare for married life. The groom occupied himself with the preparation of living accommodations in his father’s house to which he would bring his bride.
6. At the end of the period of separation the groom would come to take his bride to live with him. The taking of the bride usually took place at night. The groom, best man and other male escorts would leave the groom’s father’s house and conduct a torch light procession to the home of the bride. Although the bride was expecting her groom to come for her, she did not know the exact time of his coming. As a result the groom’s arrival would be preceded by a shout. This shout would forewarn the bride to be prepared for the coming of the groom.

7. After the groom received his bride, together with her female attendants, the enlarged wedding party would return from the bride's home to the groom's father's house. Upon arrival there the wedding party would find that the wedding guests had already assembled.
8. Shortly after arrival, the bride and groom would be escorted by the other members of the wedding party to the bridal chamber. Prior to entering the chamber the bride would remain veiled so that no one could see her face.
9. While the groomsmen and bridesmaids would wait outside, the bride and groom would enter the bridal chamber alone. There, in the privacy of that place they would enter into physical union for the first time, thereby consummating the marriage that had been covenanted earlier.
10. After the marriage was consummated the groom would announce the consummation to the other members of the wedding party waiting outside the bridal chamber. This is depicted in John 3:29, **The bride belongs to the bridegroom. The friend who attends the bridegroom waits and listens for him, and is full of joy when he hears the bridegroom's voice.....** (NIV) After the groom announces the consummation to the wedding party these people would pass on the news of the marital union to the wedding guests. Upon receiving this good news the wedding guests would feast and make merry for the next seven days.
11. During the seven days of the wedding festivities the bride remained hidden in the bridal chamber. At the conclusion of the seven days of celebration the groom would bring his bride out of the bridal chamber, but now her veil is removed so that all could see his bride.
12. In what ways was Jesus' promise in John 14:1-3 analogous with the Jewish marriage customs? The first thing that should be noted is the fact that the Scriptures regard the Church to be the Bride of Christ, as per Ephesians 5:22-25, **Wives submit to your husbands as to the Lord. (23) For the husband is the head of the wife as Christ is the head of the church, his body, of which he is the Savior. (24) Now as the church submits to Christ, so also wives should submit to their husbands in everything. (25) Husbands love your wives, just as Christ loved the church and give himself up for her....** (NIV)

13. Just as the bridegroom took the initiative in marriage by leaving his father's house and traveling to the home of the prospective bride, so Jesus left his Father's house in heaven and traveled to the earth, the home of His prospective bride, the Church, over 1900 year ago.
14. In the same manner as the Jewish bridegroom came to the bride's home for the purpose of obtaining her through the establishment of a marriage covenant, so Jesus came to the earth for the purpose of obtaining His bride, the Church through the establishment of a covenant. On the same night in which Jesus made His promise in John 14 He instituted the communion. As He passed the cup of wine to the disciples, He said, **"This cup is the new covenant in my blood"** (Luke 22:20b) referring to His substitutionary spiritual death. This was His way of saying that He would establish a new covenant through His work on the cross. That was the price he would pay for His bride.
15. Analogous to the custom of the Jewish groom paying the price to purchase his bride, Jesus paid the price to purchase His bride, the Church. The price that He paid was His substitutionary spiritual death on the cross. It was because of this purchase price that Paul wrote in I Corinthians 6:19-20, **Don't you know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit, who is in you, whom you have received from God? You are not your own; (20) YOU WERE BOUGHT AT A PRICE. Therefore honor God with your body.** (NIV: Emphasis added by the author)
16. Analogous with the Jewish bride being declared to be sanctified or set apart exclusively for her groom once the marriage covenant was established, the Church has been declared to be sanctified or set apart exclusively for Christ. Ephesians 5:25-27, **Husbands, love your wives, just as Christ loved the church and gave himself up for her (26) to make her holy, cleansing her by the washing with water through the word, (27) and to present her to himself as a radiant church, without stain or blemish, but holy and blameless.** (NIV) The word **"holy"** in verse 26 is the aorist active subjunctive of ἁγιάζω – HAGIAZO. Means "to sanctify, make holy, to set apart for special use." The aorist tense speaks of a once and for all action. A person can only be saved and sanctified once. The doctrine of eternal security is a very sound Biblical doctrine.

The word **"holy"** in verse 27 is the nominative singular of the adjective ἅγιος – HAGIOS. Means "to sanctify, to be holy, to be set

apart.” The adjective describes what the word “holy” in verse 26 really means: it describes what occurs when a person is “sanctified.” He becomes “holy, and set apart, he becomes a saint.” The second word for “**holy**” is in the singular referring to the entire church, which is made up of individuals who are “sanctified, holy and are saints.”

I Corinthians 1:2; **To the church of God in Corinth, to those sanctified in Christ Jesus and called to be holy, together with all those everywhere who call on the name of our Lord Jesus Christ—their Lord and ours:** (NIV) The word “**sanctified**” is the perfect passive participle of the verb ἁγιάζω – HAGIAZO meaning “to set apart for special service and use.” This verb is in the perfect tense referring to a past completed action having permanent results. We again see the Biblical doctrine of eternal security. This is also a passive voice telling us that the subject receives the action of the verb. The one believing in Christ receives this “sanctification.” The passive voice is known as the voice of grace, in which the one believing receives something he does not deserve.

The word “**holy**” is the dative plural of ἅγιος – HAGIOS. This is the noun form of the same word translated “sanctified.” The noun form refers to the results of “sanctification.” The results are “holiness, and perfection.” In our position in Christ we are perfect. We need to keep in mind that as the “bride” of Christ in resurrection body we are sanctified and made holy.

Hebrews 10:10,, **we have been made holy through the sacrifice of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.** (NIV) The words “**have been made holy**” is the perfect passive participle of ἁγιάζω – HAGIAZO. Means “to set apart for special service and use.” The perfect tense of this verb speaks of an action that occurred in the past but continues forever. The passive voice tells us that this is something no one deserves. This is the voice of grace. Here we see how the Church becomes sanctified, it is through the “**sacrifice of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.**”

Hebrews 13:12, **And so Jesus also suffered outside the city gate to make the people holy through his own blood.** (NIV) The phrase “**to make the people holy**” is the aorist active subjunctive of ἁγιάζω – HAGIAZO. Means “to sanctify, to set apart for special service and use.” This time we have the aorist tense of the verb which speaks of a “once and for all action.” We also have the word “blood” which refers to the means by which the “bride” or the “body” of the

church is made holy. The word “blood” does not refer to the literal blood of our Lord; it refers to His substitutionary spiritual death. I will be explaining the principles of substitutionary spiritual death as we proceed with this chapter.

17. In the same way that a cup of wine served as a symbol of the marriage covenant through which the Jewish groom obtained his bride, so the cup of communion serves as the symbol of the covenant through which Christ has obtained the Church. I Corinthians 11:15 **In the same way, after supper he took the cup, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood; do this, whenever you drink it, in remembrance of me.”** (NIV) Again we use the word “blood” which refers to our Lord’s substitutionary spiritual death.
18. Just as the Jewish groom left the home of his bride and returned to his father’s house after the marriage covenant had been established, so Jesus left the earth, the home of the Church, and returned to His Father’s house in heaven. John 6:62, **What if you see the Son of Man ascend to where he was before!** (NV) John 20:17, **Jesus said, “Do not hold on to me, for I have not yet returned to the Father.....** (NIV)
19. The analogy of the period of separation between the Jewish groom and bride is seen in the fact that Christ has remained separated from His Church for over 1900 years. The Church is now living in that period of separation.
20. Analogous to the custom of the Jewish groom preparing living accommodations for his bride in his father’s house during the time of separation is seen in the fact that Christ has been preparing living accommodations for the Church, His bride, in His Father’s house in heaven during His period of separation from His bride. John 14:2, **“In my Father’s house are many rooms; if it were not so, I would have told you. I am going there to prepare a place for you.”** (NIV)
21. In the same manner as the Jewish groom came to take his bride to live with him at the end of the period of separation, so Christ will come to take His Church, His bride, to live with Him at the end of His period of separation. John 14:3, **“And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come back and take you to be with me that you also may be where I am.”** (NIV)

22. Just as the taking of the Jewish bride was accomplished by a procession of the groom and male escorts from the groom's father's house to the home of the bride, so the taking of the Church will be accomplished by a procession of Christ and an angelic escort from His Father's house in heaven to the home of the Church, His bride. This home is in heaven because the citizenship of the bride is heavenly. I Thessalonians 4:16, **For the Lord himself will come down from heaven, with a loud command, with the trumpet call of God, and the dead in Christ will rise first.** (NIV) Philippians 3:20-21, **But our citizenship is in heaven. and we eagerly await a Savior from there, the Lord Jesus Christ, (21) who by the power that enables him to bring everything under his control, will transform our lowly bodies so that they will be like his glorious body.** (NIV)
23. As the Jewish bride did not know the exact time of the groom's coming for her, the Church does not know the exact time of Christ's coming for her.
24. In the same way that the Jewish groom's arrival was preceded by a shout, so Christ's arrival to take His Church, His bride, will be preceded by a shout. I Thess 4:16, **For the Lord himself will come down from heaven with a loud command** (or a loud shout)." (NIV)
25. Similar to the Jewish bride's return with the groom to his father's house after her departure from her home, the Church, the bride of Christ, will return with Christ to His Father's house in heaven after she is raptured away from the earth to meet Him in the air. I Thess 4:17, **....we who are still alive and are left will be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air. And so we will be with the Lord forever.** (NIV) John 14:2-3, Jesus said, **"In my Father's house are many rooms; if it were not so I would have told you. I am going to prepare a place for you. (3) And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come back and take you to be with me that you also may be where I am.** (NIV)
26. In the same manner as the Jewish wedding party found wedding guests assembled at the groom's father's when they arrived, so Christ and the Church, His bride, will find the souls of Old Testament saints assembled in heaven when they arrive. These souls in interim bodies will serve as the wedding guests. This illustration is given by Jesus in Matthew 22:1-14.

27. Parallel to the custom of the Jewish groom and bride entering into physical union after their arrival at the groom's father's house, thereby consummating the marriage that had been covenanted earlier, Christ and the Church, His bride, will experience a spiritual union after their arrival at His Father's house in heaven. This spiritual union between Christ and His Church consummate the relationship that had been covenanted earlier.
28. Analogous with the Jewish bride remaining hidden in the bridal chamber for a period of seven days after the arrival at the groom's father's house, the Church, His bride, will remain hidden for a period of seven years at Christ's Father's house in heaven while the seven year Tribulation Period is taking place on the earth. The Church, the bride of Christ, will be in heaven completely hidden from the sight of those living on the earth.
29. Just as the Jewish groom brought his bride out of the bridal chamber at the conclusion of the seven days with her veil removed so that all could see who his bride was, so Christ will bring the Church, His bride, out of heaven at His Second Advent at the conclusion of the seven year Tribulation Period in full view of all who are alive on the earth so that all can see who the true Church really is. Colossians 3:4, **When Christ, who is your life appears, then you also will appear with him in glory.** (NIV)
30. Every time the plan of salvation is given to an unbeliever, Jesus Christ is proposing to that unbeliever. He is asking that unbeliever to enter into this special relationship with Him. And just as the proposal the bridegroom made could be accepted or rejected, so Christ's proposal to the unbeliever can be accepted or rejected. Those who accept the proposal of Christ will become the bride of Christ and share all that He possesses. But those who reject the proposal of Christ will be cast out into outer darkness where there will be wailing and weeping and the gnashing of teeth, as per Matthew 22:13.

It should be noted that the Jewish marriage customs were not a part of the Mosaic Law; they were simple customs. However our Lord used the customs of His day to teach Biblical truths.

Hebrews 2:11;

Literally, "For both the One sanctifying."

And they who are sanctified - “The One sanctifying” is Jesus Christ. He is the One who makes it possible for members of the human race to be “set apart.” We are presently in union with Him and in the future we will have a resurrection body exactly like His. Phil 3:20-21, **But our citizenship is in heaven. And we eagerly await a Savior from there, the Lord Jesus Christ, (21) who, by the power that enables him to bring everything under his control, WILL TRANSFORM OUR LOWLY BODIES SO THAT THEY WILL BE LIKE HIS GLORIOUS BODY.** (NIV: emphasis added by the author)

By simply being in union with Him we are victors in the angelic conflict. Just by being saved, by believing in Jesus Christ, we have overcome the world.

I John 5:4-5,**everyone born of God overcomes the world. This is the victory that has overcome the world, even our faith. (5) Who is it that overcomes the world? Only he who believes that Jesus is the Son of God.** (NIV) If you are a born again Christian you may not be a spiritual winner, but you have “overcome the world.” And you will stand one day before God in a resurrection body. But in order for you to become a spiritual winner you must use the time God has given you here to learn and apply Bible doctrine, and, if you do, you will then qualify for special blessings and honors in time and eternity.

Literally, “For both the One sanctifying.”

And they who are sanctified -

And they - καὶ οἱ – KAI HOI. First of all we have a definite article used as a pronoun which should be translated “And the ones.” This refers to the bride which at the present time is called “His body” which refers to the Church Age believer.

Who are sanctified - ἁγιαζόμενοι – HAGIAZOMENOI. Present passive participle nominative masculine plural of ἁγιάζω – HAGIAZO. Means “to set apart for special use and service, to sanctify, to make holy, to consecrate, to dedicate.”

The difference between the two uses of HAGIAZO in this passage is that here it is used in a present passive participle, whereas in the previous phrase “the One sanctifying” was used in the present active participle. The active participle “The One sanctifying” refers to Jesus Christ who as the bridegroom initiates the action of sanctifying or setting apart. The passive participle “the ones being sanctified” refers to believers in the Church as being “responders” as a wife by analogy. So in the analogy, Jesus Christ

refers to the husband as the initiator, and the church refers to the wife as the responder. In James 4:4 it tells us that Church Age believers who reject the teaching of the Word of God are called “**adulterous people.**” (NIV)

Literally, “For the One sanctifying (Jesus Christ) and the ones being sanctified (Church Age believers only).” This does not refer to any Old Testament believer.

In addition to becoming our Substitute and Provider of salvation He also became our Sanctifier; the One who makes us holy. Christ is the One who sets us apart unto God. From our own perspective and experience it is very difficult to think of ourselves as holy or set apart unto God, unless we think in terms of self-righteousness. But in thought and practice we are generally far from being holy. Yet, on the other hand, in our new nature we are perfectly holy. Before God, we are in His Son: holy and set apart unto God. We may not act holy and we may not think holy thoughts, but we are holy in our position in Christ. Just as a child who often does not act like his father or in a manner that pleases his father, he is still his father’s son. We are holy in the sense that, in the sight of God, the righteousness of Christ has been applied and imputed to us in our behalf. **And by that will** (the will of God), **we have been made holy** (set apart, sanctified) **through the sacrifice of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.** (NIV: Hebrews 10:10, emphasis added by the author) We have been made holy or sanctified through His sacrifice.

The work of Jesus Christ has removed the possibility of positional sinfulness. Because by one sacrifice he has made perfect (complete) forever those who are being made holy. (NIV) Therefore we are as pure positionally as God is pure. Being as righteous positionally as Christ is righteous. We are entitled to be called sons of God and joint heirs with Jesus Christ (Rom 8:17a;) because we now share His perfect righteousness. Such are the wonders and kindness of the grace of God. II Corinthians 5:21 tells us **God made him who had no sin to be sin for us, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God.** (NIV)

Literally, “For the One sanctifying (Jesus Christ) and the ones being sanctified (Church Age believers).”

Are all of one - ἐξ ἑνὸς πάντες - EX HENOS PANTES. First of all we have the preposition EX plus the ablative of source from εἶς - HEIS, plus the nominative masculine plural of the adjective πᾶς - PAS translated “all.” It actually means “all from.” HEIS means “one.”

Literally, “All from the source of one.”

The “One” refers to God the Father who is the author of the divine plan. The word “all” refers to believers of the Church Age only. God the Father is the author of the plan; He is the source of all grace and He is the source of the bride for Jesus Christ.

In eternity past God the Father knew that it would not be good for His Son, the last Adam, “to be alone.” Therefore He provided for the last Adam a bride, just as he provided a bride for the first Adam in the Garden of Eden.

In Genesis 2:18 it says, The Lord God said, “**It is not good for the man to be alone.....**” (NIV) After that the Lord God created woman for the man in the Garden of Eden. In the same manner God the Father is doing the same thing for the second Adam, Jesus Christ. It is not good that Jesus Christ, the second Adam should be alone, so God the Father is creating a bride for Him, known as the Church. In the cases of both the first and second Adams it was not good for them to be alone. We know from the book of Genesis that the Lord God created a woman for Adam, and we know from the study of the New Testament Epistles that God the Father is constructing a bride for His Son, the second Adam, built or constructed with individuals from the Church Age only.

PRINCIPLE: in His humiliation of bearing our sins the second Adam, Jesus Christ, was definitely alone (Psalm 22:1). Historically He was alone (Matthew 27:46; Mark 15:34;). But with His resurrection and glorification there is a necessity that someone share in His glory because it is “not good that man should be alone.”

The first Adam had a glory (Heb 2:7), and he was the ruler of the world (Heb 2:8), and as the ruler of this world it was not good for him to be alone. In the future the last Adam, Jesus Christ, is going to rule and it is not good for Him be alone as the ruler of this world. Therefore God the Father will provide for Jesus Christ what Jesus Christ provided for the first Adam, a bride. The bride for the first Adam was a woman, but the bride for the last Adam will include all the believers of the Church Age.

Therefore the Sanctifier (Jesus Christ) and the ones being sanctified (Church Age believers) have “**One Father.**”

For which cause - δι' ἣν αἰτίαν – DI HEN AITIAN. First of all we have the preposition DIA, plus the accusative singular of ὅς – HOS and has several meanings, “because of which, or “for which reason.” but here it should be translated “For this reason.”

He is not ashamed - οὐκ ἐπαισχύνεται – OUK EPAISCHUNETAI. First of all we have the negative OUK plus the present passive indicative third person singular of of ἐπαισχύνομαι – EPAISCHUNOMAI.

EPI, the prefixed preposition means “upon to or toward.”

AISCHUNOMAI means “to be ashamed.”

EPAISCHUNOMAI means “to be ashamed toward, or to be ashamed of.”

PRESENT TENSE, linear aktionsart plus the negative OUK means that He is never ashamed.” This is an intensified use of the verb.

PASSIVE VOICE: the subject receives the action of the verb, but with the negative OUK it means that He is never ashamed of His bride.

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative) emphasizing the absolute reality of this statement. He never receives any shame from His bride.

Literally, “He is not ashamed.”

To call them brethren - ἀδελφούς αὐτοὺς καλεῖν – ADELPHOUS AUTOUS KALEIN. This refers to members of the family of God. ADELPHOS means “next of kin, a relative, a family member.” The words “to call” is from the present active infinitive of καλέω – KALEO meaning “to call, to name, to regard, to present or to introduce.” In other words, the Lord will not be ashamed of them in any way. That is grace.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 11: “For both the One sanctifying (Jesus Christ) and the ones being sanctified (Church Age believers) are all from one source (God the Father), for this reason He is not ashamed to call them brethren.”

What an overwhelming truth! How humbling to have the Son of God call us brethren and not be ashamed of us. By conquering sin through His substitutionary spiritual death He broke sin’s mastery over us and placed His eternal righteousness in us. We are therefore “heirs with Christ” (Rom 8:17) and this is only true because His righteousness is our righteousness, His holiness is now our holiness and this makes us family members. The only way anyone can become a member of the family of God, and therefore a child of God is through personal faith in Jesus Christ.

It should be noted here that the practical experience of a Christian’s life does include sin. There is no way to escape it, and there is no way to avoid

it. But in the action of positional sanctification there is a new nature implanted in us which is perfect and holy. **“In him (we) have been made perfect”** (Colossians 2:10, KJV) The word **“perfect”** is the perfect passive participle of πληρόω – PLEEROO meaning “perfect in the sense of filling up a deficiency, to fulfill and to complete.” The perfect tense speaks of a past completed action having permanent results. The passive voice tells us this is something we receive when we place our faith in Christ. We do not earn it nor do we deserve it. Therefore the basic and overriding purpose of our lives now is to move toward spiritual maturity. Since God has given us His own perfect righteousness in our position as members of His royal family, we are to learn and apply His **“perfect law that gives freedom”** (NIV: James 1:25) which refers to learning and applying Bible doctrine daily.

At salvation God placed within us His own perfect and absolute righteousness and perfection. This is our position in Christ forever. Nothing can change that! But in our experience here on earth we are very imperfect and very sinful. But God has given us something for our life here, something as perfect and holy as He is and that is His Word.

Psalm 18:30,**the word of the Lord is flawless.....** (NIV)

Psalm 107:20, **He sent forth his word and healed them.....** (NIV)

Psalm 119:105, **Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light to my path.** (NIV)

Psalm 119:130, **The unfolding of your words gives light; it gives understanding to the simple.** (NIV)

Psalm 138:2,**for you have exalted above all things your name and your word.** (NIV)

Hebrews 4:12, **For the word of God is living and active.....** (NIV)

Hebrews 11:3,**the universe was formed at God’s command.....**(NIV) Over and over again the Bible declares to us that the Word of God is perfect, righteous and powerful, whether it is spoken or written.

Summary Regarding the Word “Ashamed”

1. Verse 11 clearly teaches us that Jesus Christ is not ashamed of any born again believer no matter what type of life he may live. We all know that many believers do shameful things in their daily living if they do not follow the teachings of the Word of God.
2. But in our passage of Hebrews 2:11 the writer is referring to positional sanctification first, then to ultimate sanctification, when the bride comes back with Jesus Christ to the earth in the resurrection body received seven years earlier.

3. Between positional sanctification and ultimate sanctification is where all the problems exist. Christians always fail in their experience or in their experiential sanctification, referring to their spiritual lives here on the earth. There are many Christians who never attend Bible class, who are immoral, who are degenerate, murderers, prostitutes, pimps, drug users and dealers, and alcoholics, to name a few things. But did you know that Jesus Christ will not be ashamed of them after the Rapture and resurrection? Grace found a way to do something we could never do.
4. If you are familiar with the Word of God then you are aware that God is ashamed of you every time you commit a sin in any category because it violates His perfect standards. But God has also found a way to take the worst Christian who has ever lived and present him perfect and blameless and look at him through Christ in perfect righteousness, a place where God will not and cannot be ashamed of him. That is the plan of grace.
5. The first thing that would make Him ashamed of us would be our sins. God's hatred for sin is indescribable. But all of our sins were judged on Jesus Christ on the cross. Sins were eliminated as a condemning factor in the lives of everyone. We studied that in Hebrews 1:3, **.....after he had provided purification for sins.....**" The word **"purification"** is from the Greek word καθαρισμός – KATHARISMOS. Means "to cleanse, to purify, to remove anything for the purpose of purification." It refers to "destruction," or "elimination." This is explained in greater detail in volume one pages 110-115 of the author's book of Hebrews Chapter One. Therefore, sins have been eliminated and they can never be brought up against us again.
6. There was also a shame that Jesus Christ took on the cross, Heb 12:2, **.....who for the joy set before him endured the cross, scorning its shame.....** (NIV) The principle of shame that goes along with sin was also taken by Jesus Christ on the cross.
7. Along with the sins and shame guilt is another thing that Jesus Christ took on the cross. He took the penalty of all the guilt that sin brings. In other words, no one will ever feel the punishment of guilt from God because of any sin. In fact, guilt is a sin.
8. Another thing that would make Him ashamed of us is human good. Human good refers to anything good, decent and right that is accomplished apart from the ministry of the Holy Spirit. The majority

of Christians today are doing a lot of good things apart from the filling of the Holy Spirit which means that their good things, no matter how good they may be, will be destroyed. I Corinthians 3:11-15 tells us that all human good, all good things accomplished apart from the filling of the Holy Spirit, will be burned up at the judgment seat of Christ at the Rapture.

PRINCIPLE: note all of the things that God had to do so He wouldn't be ashamed of us in eternity. Notice that I said "WHAT GOD HAD TO DO," not what we have to do. This is all God's plan and God does all of the work. All we have to do is believe and accept what He has done.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 11: "For both the One sanctifying (Jesus Christ) and the ones being sanctified (Church Age believers) are all from one source (God the Father), for this reason He is not ashamed to call them brethren."

Hebrews 2:12;

Vs 12: **Saying, I will declare thy name unto my brethren, in the midst of the church will I sing praise unto thee.**
(KJV)

This verse gives us some documentation on the principles taught in verse 11. The writer of the book of Hebrews has just stated the fact that the Lord Jesus Christ is not ashamed to call those who believe in Him brethren, and now he quotes Psalm 22:22 for the documentation of this attitude. Here the writer quotes from the Hebrew Old Testament rather than the Greek Old Testament.

Saying - λέγων - LEGON. Present active participle nominative masculine singular of λέγω - LEGO. Means "to say, to speak, to declare, to announce." This is used to introduce a quotation from Psalm 22:22. Psalm 22:1 is where we have the prophetic statement of "**My God, My God, why have you forsaken me?**" (NIV) The quotation of Psalm 22:1 is followed by other verses that bring us to Psalm 22:22 which is quoted in the passage of Hebrews 2:12. Psalm 22:22 anticipates the session of Jesus Christ being seated at the right hand of God the Father, at which point God the Father begins to provide a bride for the last Adam. In Hebrews 1:13 we are told that God the Father will provide a footstool for the feet of His Son. Christ is told to sit down at His right hand until He makes His enemies His footstool. That occurs at the Second Advent. But before providing a footstool God the Father begins to provide a bride for His Son, the last Adam.

Ten days after Jesus Christ was seated at the right hand of the Father, the grace process began to create a bride for Christ. This began at the day of Pentecost and it will conclude at the Rapture when all Church Age believers will receive resurrection bodies and will be evaluated. All human good will be burned up and then seven years later the bride will return with Jesus Christ to the earth. The bride comes before the crown. Not only does the cross come before the crown, but so does the bride come before the crown. We, as Church Age believers, as the bride of Christ, will be present at the coronation of Jesus Christ as the ruler of the world. We will be present as His bride.

In Psalm 22:21a, we see the death of Christ.

In Psalm 22:21b. we see the resurrection of Christ.

In Psalm 22:22, we see the ascension and session of Jesus Christ.

We need to remember that Psalm 22:1 “**My God, My God, why have you forsaken me?**” (NIV) is prophetic of the cross which anticipates the resurrection, ascension and session of Jesus Christ.

Principles of Anticipation

1. After His ascension Christ was promised a bride and future rulership of the world.
2. At the Rapture and resurrection of all Church Age believers Jesus Christ receives His bride. Then at the Second Advent He receives His kingdom.
3. The cross comes before the crown, the bride comes after the cross and before the coronation and the kingdom.
4. The Father is perfect, therefore His order is perfect. His order is given in point three of these principles.
5. In the Church Age a bride is being prepared for Jesus Christ, the last Adam.
6. In the tribulation period, historical and geographical events are preparing the earth for the king and His kingdom.
7. The Second Advent of Jesus Christ will remove the angelic ruler of the world, Satan, and place the rightful heir on the throne, Jesus Christ. He is called the last Adam, the son of David. In verse 10 He is called “the Prince Leader” of our salvation. He is also called the groom of the Church, the King of kings and Lord of lords. Jesus Christ is therefore, the only celebrity of the Church Age. As the bride of Christ we have one celebrity, Jesus Christ. He is the groom for His bride, the Church. All of this is a wonderful way to introduce Him as the High Priest, which will be coming up in chapter three of Hebrews. Therefore, He is the High Priest as well as the Prince Leader.

Literally, “Saying.”

I will declare - Ἐπαγγέλω – APAGGELO. Future active indicative first person singular of ἀπαγγέλλω – APAGGELLO. Means “to bring news, to tell, to report, to proclaim, to announce.”

David wrote Psalm 22, but the subject of the verb is Jesus Christ seated at the right hand of the Father. When it says “I will proclaim,” the subject is Jesus Christ. Jesus Christ as it were “proclaims” this in heaven. He had to leave the earth at His ascension, but he left His future bride here in the devil’s kingdom. But He left her with a permanent message in written form which we call the Bible and it contains a permanent record of the mind of Christ (I Cor 2:16). Therefore Jesus Christ says, “I will proclaim.”

Your name - τὸ ὄνομά – TO ONOMA. This refers to the name of God the Father. The Greek word ONOMA translated “name” refers to personality or character. Literally, “I will proclaim your personality or your character or your plan.”

God the Father is the author of the divine plan called grace. The Father’s plan is clearly proclaimed in the Word of God. The Father’s plan has been reduced to writing and is in permanent form. The content of scripture is the fulfillment of this verb.

Literally, “Saying, I will proclaim your name (of the Father)”

Unto my brethren - σου τοῖς ἀδελφοῖς μου – SOU TOIS ADELPHOIS MOU. First of all we have the genitive singular of the pronoun σύ – SU translated “my.” With this we have the dative plural of the definite article ὁ – HO. Plus the dative plural of the noun ἀδελφός – ADELPHOS. Means “family members, next of kin.” This is a dative of advantage.

Literally, “Saying, I will proclaim your name (of the Father) to the members of the family.”

The believer has a response to this when he learns Bible doctrine, so we have the believer’s response.

In the midst of the church - ἐν μέσῳ ἐκκλησίας – EN MESO EKKLESIAS. First of we have the preposition EN translated “in.” Plus the adjective μέσος – MESOS. When used with the genitive case as it is here it means “in the middle.” Plus the genitive singular of the noun ἐκκλησία – EKKLESIA. EK means “out of, out from.” KLESIA is from KALEO meaning “to call, or to summon.” EKKLESIA means “the called out ones, an assembly, a congregation of Israel, or the church.” When this was originally written in Psalm 22 it referred to the “the middle of the assembly,” the assembly of Israel. Today EKKLESIA means “the assembly” with reference to the “church.” But originally as written by David it meant “the assembly of Israel.”

When Israel assembled David praised the Lord. So this was the original response of David as the writer of Psalm 22, “In the middle of the congregation of Israel.” But here in Hebrews the writer uses this passage with reference to the Church Age, “In the middle of the Church.”

Will I sing praises unto thee - ὑμνήσω σε – HUMNESO SE. First of all we have the future active indicative first person singular of ὑμνέω – HUMNEO. This is where we get our English word “hymn.” HUMNEO means “to sing a hymn, to sing praise.” This means “to sing a praise Psalm.”

FUTURE TENSE: refers to the time after the body of Christ becomes the bride of Christ. Many people who could not sing in mortal bodies will be able to sing perfectly after they receive their resurrection bodies. Therefore, this refers to the response of the church after she receives her resurrection body.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 12: “Saying, ‘I will proclaim your name in my family for their advantage and in the middle of the church I will sing praise to you’”

Doctrine of the Church

1. One of the most common ways that the Church is spoken of in scripture is from the standpoint of positional truth. The phrase that is used many times in the New Testament, “**in Christ,**” refers to the Church.
2. The Church is also described as a body in I Corinthians chapter 12 and Romans chapter 12. The Church is described as the body and Christ is called “the Head” of the body. Colossians 1:18, **And he is the head of the body, the church;.....** (NIV) Eph 5:23, **.....Christ is the head of the church, his body, of which he is the Savior.** (NIV)
3. The Greek word that is used for our English word “Church” is ἐκκλησία – EKKLESIA. This is an Attic Greek word which goes back to the fifth century B.C. In the fifth century EKKLESIA was used for the assembly of Greeks as a ruling body.

The same word is used in Acts 7:38 referring to the assembly of the Jews in the Old Testament. This is where many get the wrong idea that the Church was in the Old Testament. The gospels are in the Age of Israel. Acts is a transition book. Only the epistles contain Church Age information.

The same word is used in Matthew 18:17 for a Jewish Synagogue. The word is incorrectly translated “Church” in the King James Version as well as the New International Version. These incorrect translations give the idea that the Church existed at the time of our Lord’s earthly ministry and that is false doctrine. Jesus Himself said that the Church was future from His time in Matthew 16:18 when He said,**I will build my church.** (NIV) The future tense is emphasized in that passage.

EKKLESIA is also found in Acts 19:25 for an assembly of Hellenistic people.

Throughout the New Testament epistles the word EKKLESIA is used for the Church in two different ways.

- A. The Church Universal: this refers to every believer in Jesus Christ regardless of his geographical location. Every born again believer on the earth is in Christ. The Universal Church has never held an assembly together. The first assembly of the church universal will occur at the Rapture.
 - B. The Local Church: this refers to a group of believers meeting in a certain geographical locality. The Church at Corinth, I Cor 1:1; the Church at Thessalonica, I Thess 1:1, these were local churches.
4. In the first few years after the beginning of the Church, it was called “the Way,” Acts 9:2b,**found any there who belonged to THE WAY, whether men or women.....** (NIV: emphasis provided by the author) Acts 24:14a, **However, I admit that I worship the God of our fathers as a follower of THE WAY, which they call a sect.....** (NIV: emphasis added by the author)
 5. The term “Christian” came into existence a few years after the Church began. The name was coined from the words “Christ’s ones,” referring to those who belonged to Christ. Acts 11:26b,**The disciples were called Christians first at Antioch.** (NIV)
 6. The Church began in 30 A.D. on the Day of Pentecost, fifty days after the Feast of Firstfruits. The Feast of Firstfruits refers to the resurrection of Jesus Christ. I Corinthians 15:20-23, **But Christ has indeed been raised from the dead, the FIRSTFRUITS of those who have fallen asleep. (21) For since death came through a man, the resurrection of the dead comes also**

through a man. (22) For as in Adam all die, so in Christ all will be made alive. (23) But each in his own turn: Christ, the FIRSTFRUITS; then when he comes, those who belong to him. (NIV: emphasis added by the author) The Church began fifty days after the resurrection of Jesus Christ.

7. The Church did not exist in the Old Testament. We know this because of the doctrine of the mystery. The Greek word translated mystery is found 22 times in the New Testament. It is **μυστήριον** – MUSTERION. It refers to something that was never revealed before. The Old Testament taught the law, the Church teaches the doctrine of grace. All Church Age doctrine is called “Mystery doctrine.” Colossians 1:25-27, **I have become its (the Church) servant by the commission God gave me to present to you the word of God in its fullness—(26) THE MYSTERY that has been kept hidden for ages and generations, but is now disclosed to the saints. (27) To them God has chosen to make known among the Gentiles the glorious riches of THIS MYSTERY, which is Christ in you, the hope of glory.** (NIV: emphasis added by the author)

Romans 16:25-27, **Now to him who is able to establish you by my gospel and the proclamation of Jesus Christ, according to the revelation of THE MYSTERY hidden for long ages past, (26) but now revealed and made known through the prophetic writings by the command of the eternal God, so that all nations might believe and obey him— (27) to the only wise God be glory forever through Jesus Christ! Amen.** (NIV: emphasis added by the author)

Ephesians 3:1-6, **For this reason I, Paul, the prisoner of Christ Jesus for the sake of you Gentiles— (2) Surely you have heard about the administration of God’s grace that was given to me for you, (3) that is, THE MYSTERY made known to me by revelation, as I have already written briefly. (4) In reading this, then, you will be able to understand my insight into THE MYSTERY of Christ, (5) which was not made known to men in other generations as it has now been revealed by the Spirit of God’s holy apostles and prophets. (6) THIS MYSTERY is that through the gospel the Gentiles are heirs together with Israel, members together of one body, and sharers together in the promise in Christ Jesus.** (NIV: emphasis added by the author)

8. The Doctrine of the Mystery shows us that the Old Testament taught certain things about the Messiah. His death, resurrection, ascension and session. But then it skips over the entire Church Age and goes directly to the Tribulation, the Second Advent of Christ and the Millennium. There is no Church Age information in the Old Testament.
9. The Church Age was prophesied by Jesus Christ. He was the first One to do so. Acts 1:5, Jesus said, **“For John baptized with water, but in a few days you will be baptized with the Holy Spirit.”** (NIV) Ten days later the baptism of the Holy Spirit came upon the believers in Jerusalem marking the beginning of the Church Age.
10. Nine Characteristics of the Church Age:
 - A. Never before in history was there a baptism of the Holy Spirit. The baptism of the Holy Spirit simply means that the Holy Spirit takes the believer at the point of salvation and places him in union with Jesus Christ.
 - B. Never before in history were believers indwelt by the Holy Spirit.
 - C. Never before in history were believers indwelt by Jesus Christ as they are in the Church Age. (John 14:20)
 - D. Never before in history could every believer represent himself to God. In the Church Age all believers are priests and can go directly to God in prayer.
 - E. Never before in history was every believer equipped to live a supernatural way of life with a supernatural means of execution. This is only available in the Church Age.
 - F. Never before in history was every believer in full time service for the Lord, but they are in the Church Age. Every believer is an ambassador for Jesus Christ. II Corinthians 5;20.
 - G. Never before in history has a greater responsibility been delegated to every believer than in the Church Age.
 - H. Never before in history have believers received all of their instructions in writing. Church Age believers have been given a completed canon of scripture.
 - I. Never before in history has ritual in worship been replaced by the filling of the Holy Spirit, but it has in the Church Age.

11. The main purpose and objective of the Church is the teaching of the Word of God and the equipping of Christians to fight the spiritual war they are involved in. The objective of the Church is not to win souls, it is not to be evangelistic, but it is to edify the body of Christ on earth. Evangelism is to take place outside of the local church by individual Christians or by a man with the gift of evangelism. Unbelievers are not to be invited into Bible classes in the Church because that is God's ordained classroom for believers who make up the body of Christ.

12. The Church Age ends at the Rapture. II Thessalonians 4:16-17, **For the Lord himself will come down from heaven, with a loud command, with the voice of the archangel and with the trumpet call of God, and the dead in Christ will rise first. (17) After that, we who are still alive and are left will be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air. And so we will be with the Lord forever. (NIV)**
The Church Age ends seven years before the Second Advent of Jesus Christ.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 12: "Saying, 'I will proclaim your name in my family for their advantage and in the midst of the church I will sing praise to you'"

Hebrews 2:13;

Vs 13: **And again, I will put my trust in him. And again, Behold I and the children which God hath given me.**
(KJV)

The documentation continues in verse 13 with a quotation from Isaiah 8:17-18 from the Septuagint (LXX). This documentation from the Old Testament presents two sides of the Angelic Conflict. The quotation from Isaiah 8:17 presents the human side and the documentation from Isaiah 8:18 presents the divine side.

And again - καὶ πάλιν – KAI PALIN. This phrase occurs twice in this verse. It is correctly translated “and again.” This is one of the ways to introduce a quotation from the Old Testament.

The first use of the words “and again” introduces Isaiah 8:17.

I will put - Ἐγὼ ἔσομαι. EGO ESOMAI. This is a very rare construction. First of all we have the nominative singular of the pronoun EGO, followed by the future active indicative of the verb εἶμι – EIMI, one of the verbs of “absolute state of being.” This is a periphrastic future perfect. A periphrastic is made up of a verb followed by a participle. The Septuagint does not have the personal pronoun EGO. The writer of the book of Hebrews adds it to the quotation under the leading of the Holy Spirit to bring out the fact that the Messiah is being referred to. Because EGO is added, the verb EIMI is placed before the participle. In this construction the writer of the book of Hebrews makes the prophet Isaiah a type or shadow of the Messiah as speaking these words. Although Jesus Christ Himself was God and omnipotent, in His humiliation and in His human nature here on earth, Jesus completely depended on God the Father. His trust in the Father is revealed in all His prayers. On the cross He dismissed His human spirit into the care of God the Father. He was like all God’s sons, living and then also dying with His trust in the Father. It should be noted that a periphrastic construction is used to intensify the results of the action of the verb. The verb being emphasized is “**trust**” in the next phrase. The word “put” is not in the Greek text. The translators inserted it in an attempt to make a smoother English translation.

My trust - πεποιθὼς PEPOITHOS. Perfect active participle nominative masculine singular of the verb πείθω – PEITHO. Means “to trust, to have full confidence in, to rely on, to believe.” PEITHO is the root word of πίστις – PISTIS and is usually translated throughout the New Testament by the English word “faith.”

In this grammatical structure, the future perfect periphrastic indicates a permanent result in the Church Age. The permanent result is that every believer becomes the bride of Jesus Christ. How do we become the bride of Jesus Christ? By first believing in Him as our personal Savior which places us into union with Him making us a member of His body. Then at the Rapture and resurrection all those who have believed in Him are changed and become His bride. This is accomplished by believing, rather than by doing good things and certainly not by inviting Jesus into your heart. There is nothing in the Word of God that tells us to invite Jesus Christ into our hearts, or even into our lives. We become a member of His body by believing, trusting, relying on Him, having confidence in Him and in nothing else. You accept Jesus Christ as your Savior. As the King James Version says, **“I (Jesus Christ) will put my trust in him.”** (Heb 2:13 and Isaiah 8:17)

Isaiah 8:17 is quoted to indicate the permanence of our relationship with Him. All who believe or trust in Him will be a part of the bride of Christ forever. And that position is only attained through “faith or trust.”

Literally, “And again, I (Jesus Christ) will put my trust.”

In him - ἐπ’ αὐτῷ – EP AUTO. First of all we have the preposition EPI plus the dative singular of the pronoun αὐτός – AUTOS translated “him.” This refers to God the Father. All provision has its source in God the Father. Jesus Christ depended on the Father for all things. Now we as believers living in the Church Age are to depend on God the Father for all things, but we can only approach God the Father through Jesus Christ.

PRINCIPLE: God the Father is the underlying source of our salvation and all our blessing in time and eternity.

And again - καὶ πάλιν – KAI PALIN. The second use of this phrase in this verse introduces another quotation. This time the quotation of Isaiah 8:18 which gives the divine side of the Angelic Conflict.

Behold I and the children which God hath given me -

Behold - Ἴδοὺ – IDOU. This is an interjection meaning “look, see, behold.”

I - ἐγὼ – EGO. The nominative singular of the pronoun EGO referring to Jesus Christ at the right hand of God the Father.

And the children - καὶ τὰ παῖδιά – KAI TA PAIDIA. The word **“and”** is a translation of the conjunction KAI. With this is the nominative plural of the definite article ὁ – HO correctly translated **“the.”** Plus the nominative

plural from the noun παιδίον – PAIDION. It is correctly translated “**children,**” but there is more to this word than just its definition. The word PAIDION does mean “children.” However, in a closer examination of this word we find that it was used in ancient writings as a term of endearment and could be translated “dear children.” In the context of this passage it refers to two things: first, these children are human and two, they are dependent on the Lord as having been given to Him from God the Father. This is the same relationship that we saw in the phrase “the Sanctifier” and “the sanctified” in verse 11. The phrase could be translated, “the dear children” from God.

Literally, “Behold, I (Jesus Christ) and the dear children.”

Which God hath given me -

Which God - ὁ θεός – HO THEOS. First of all we have the definite article HO. The definite article is used to identify the noun THEOS. THEOS referring to God the Father.

Hath given - ἔδωκεν – HA MOI EDOKEN. The Greek literally says, “whom God gave to me.” The words “hath given” is the aorist active indicative third person singular of δίδωμι – DIDOMI. Means “to give, to bestow, to present.” The aorist tense tells us that the very moment you believed in or trusted in Jesus Christ was the moment when God the Father gave you to Christ to become a part of His bride.

John 17:20-26, This is a part of the prayer of Jesus. **“My prayer is not for them alone. I pray also for those who will believe in me through their message, (21) that all of them may be one, Father, just as you are in me and I am in you. May they also be in us so that the world may believe that you have sent me. (22) I have given them the glory that you gave me, that they may be one as we are one: (23) I in them and you in me. May they be brought to complete unity to let the world know that you sent me and have loved them even as you have loved me.**

(24) **“Father, I want those YOU HAVE GIVEN ME to be with me where I am, and to see my glory, the glory you have given me because you loved me before the creation of the world.**

(25) **“Righteous Father, though the world does not know you, I know you, and they know that you have sent me. (26) I have made you known to them, and will continue to make you known in order that the love you have for me may be in them and that I myself may be in them.”** (NIV: emphasis added by the author)

Literally, And again, Behold I (Jesus Christ) and the dear children whom God has given.”

Me - **μοι** – MOI. Dative singular of the pronoun **ἐγώ** – EGO. This is a dative of possession. The dative of possession refers to a personal interest particularized to the point of ownership. These believers now belong to God, but they have been given to Jesus Christ, the last Adam, so that He should not be alone.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 13: “And again, I (Jesus Christ) will put my trust in Him (God the Father). And again, Behold, I (Jesus Christ) and the dear children (Church Age believers) whom God has given to me (Jesus Christ) for a possession.”

Summary Principles of Verse 13

1. The writer of Hebrews quotes Isaiah 8:17-18 from the Septuagint to show the close unity which exists between the Lord Jesus Christ and those whom He calls His brethren.
2. The context of the quotation from Isaiah concerns the prophet’s denunciation of Israel for failure to trust in God during the war between Syria and Israel under Ahaz in and around 740 B.C. Isaiah declares his own trust in God, and that his children have been appointed as living symbols of the divine will. The name of his first son is given in Isaiah 8:3, “**Maher-shalal-hash-baz.**” The name of his other son is found in Isaiah 7:3, “**Shear-jashub.**” The name of his first son “**Maher-shalal-hash-baz**” means “haste ye, haste ye to the spoil,” and is a sign of the coming judgment and slavery for Israel. The name of his second son “**Shear-jashub**” means “a remnant shall return,” and is a sign of the return of the remnant at the end of the seventy years of slavery.

The meanings of these two names will teach Israel that Assyria will defeat Damascus and Syria, and that in the middle of that invasion God will still be with Judah. Both the prophet and his children are omens of the nation’s future. The children of Isaiah were babies at the time of the writing. Therefore, the unity which existed between Isaiah and his children was that which exists between a father and his children. It was this unity that the writer of the book of Hebrews uses as an illustration of the relationship between the Lord Jesus Christ and those who believe in Him. He calls them brethren.

3. When Jesus Christ was in the world He learned the obedience of faith and trust and thereby became the perfect Savior. This is the example that He left us. His examples were not that of being good, not sinning, helping others or doing good deeds. The prime example that Jesus Christ gave to us was His total dependence on the Father. His faith and trust in God the Father is what we are to emulate. Following our Lord in that manner is more important than anything else.
4. We are not a member of the family of Jesus Christ because of our common nature. We are human, but He is divine; we are corrupt and depraved. We are members of the family of Jesus Christ because of a common faith in the Lord Jesus Christ, the imputation of God's righteousness at the point of salvation, and a common trust in God the Father as He leads and guides each of us through God the Holy Spirit.
5. What a fantastic thing to realize that when we are called to live by faith, that means that we are to live in total dependence on Him. We are to live our lives just as Jesus Christ lived His: trusting in God for everything. John 5:19, **Jesus gave them this answer: "I tell you the truth, the Son can do nothing by himself; he can do only what he sees his Father doing, because whatever the Father does the Son also does."** (NIV) Being in the family of God and following Jesus means that we possess His perfect righteousness and that we live by faith just as He did.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 13: "And again, I (Jesus Christ) will put my trust in Him (God the Father). And again, Behold, I (Jesus Christ) and the dear children (Church Age believers) whom God has given to me (Jesus Christ) for a possession."

Hebrews 2:14;

Vs 14: Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil; (KJV)

One thing that has never been clearly presented about this verse is the fact that the word “**death**,” which occurs twice refers to spiritual death only. It does not refer to physical death. There is no way you will ever understand this verse if you are under the misconception that the devil has the power of physical death. It is true that the devil administers physical death at times under the sovereignty of God for special discipline as in I Corinthians chapter five. But the devil does not have the power of physical death. He did have the power of spiritual death, which he obtained at the fall of man in the Garden of Eden. Jesus took this power away from Satan at the cross. There is no way you will ever understand this verse until you understand that the only death mentioned in verse 14 is spiritual death.

Doctrine of Spiritual death

1. DEFINITION AND DESCRIPTION:
 - A. Spiritual death is defined as separation from God in a state of total depravity and total helplessness with regard to any relationship with God.
 - B. Every member of the human race possesses spiritual death from the moment of physical birth.
 - C. Other rational creatures, such as angels, also have undergone something similar.
2. THERE ARE TWO CATEGORIES OF SPIRITUAL DEATH:
 - A. Real spiritual death is separation from God in a state of sin, depravity and total helplessness. This is the state of all human beings at the point of physical birth.
 - B. Substitutionary spiritual death is separation from God in a state of perfection and impeccability. This applies only to the Lord Jesus Christ.
3. Real spiritual death applies to Adam’s original sin and is the status quo of all members of the human race at the point of physical birth.

4. On the other hand, substitutionary spiritual death is a separation that only applies to the work of Jesus Christ on the cross in purchasing our so great salvation.
5. Originally man was created with a body, soul and spirit. The body was designed to function in the physical environment of God's creation on the earth. The soul is the incorporeal part of man that possesses feelings, emotion, thought, and the ability to imagine and to design and build. The human spirit is designed to have fellowship with God and to learn and know about God.
6. The creation of man is recorded in Genesis 2:7, **The Lord God formed the man from the dust of the ground and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life and man became a living being.** (NIV) Note that God **“formed man from the dust of the ground.”** Man's physical body is composed from the chemical elements of the earth. This gives him the ability to function normally in the physical environment of the earth.

Note also the phrase, **“breathed into his nostrils the breath of life.”** The words **“breath of life”** are from the Hebrew word נְשָׁמָה – NESHAMA. Means “breath, wind, air, spirit, life.” The Septuagint (the Greek Old Testament) uses the word πνέω – PNEO. This is the root for πνεῦμα – PNEUMA. Means “wind, air, breath, soul, spirit.” Therefore, when God “breathed into the original man” He gave him a soul in order to have fellowship with other members of the human race, but He also gave him a human spirit by which man could have fellowship with God, His creator.

7. Genesis 2:16-17 describes the command that God gave the man in the Garden of Eden: **And the Lord God commanded man, “You are free to eat from any tree in the garden; (17) but you must not eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, for when you eat of it you will surely die.”** (NIV)
8. The death spoken of in Genesis 2:17 was not physical death, but spiritual death. When Adam and Eve ate from the forbidden tree they died spiritually. They suffered a real spiritual death. They lost their ability to have fellowship with God. It should be noted that man's body and soul was still intact. He did not die physically when he ate from the forbidden fruit. He died spiritually.

9. When man sinned in the Garden of Eden he entered into real spiritual death. Romans 5:12, **Therefore, just as sin entered the world through one man, and death through sin, and in this way death came to all men, because all sinned** — (NIV) It should be noted that the word “**sin**” is in the singular referring to the sinful nature which resides in every human being. It does not refer to individual sins. It should also be noted that the word “**death**” is used twice in this verse and both times it refers to real spiritual death. How do we know that? The Greek word is the nominative singular of θάνατος – THANATOS. Means “death.” But it is usually used for spiritual death. We know this because the Greeks had another word for “death,” it is νεκρός – NEKROS. Means “death,” but it usually refers to physical death.

Therefore in Romans 5:12 the Apostle Paul clarifies the fact that when Adam sinned in the Garden of Eden, his death was a real spiritual death and not a physical death. Adam eventually died, but his physical death was because he was not allowed to eat of the tree of life after he rebelled against God.

Romans 5:12 also tells us that all human beings born into the world are born spiritually dead possessing real spiritual death, real separation from God.

10. There are seven results of Adam’s original sin and his real spiritual death in the Garden of Eden.
- A. At the point of Adam’s original sin and spiritual death he lost the rulership of the earth to Satan. In his initial creation Adam was given rulership of the earth, Psalm 8:6, **You made him ruler over the works of your hands; you put everything under his feet:** (NIV) Heb 2:7-8, **You made him a little lower than the angels; you crowned him with glory and honor (8) and put everything under his feet.** (NIV) This was Adam’s original position in the plan of God after his creation.

But after Adam sinned and became spiritually dead, Satan, the original ruler of the world before his fall, regained his rulership over the earth. In II Corinthians 4:4 Satan is called “**the god of this age.**” (NIV) In Ephesians 2:2 Satan is called “**the ruler of the kingdom of the air**” (NV)

- B. At the point of Adam’s original sin and spiritual death he entered into a state of total helplessness, and there was nothing he could

do to regain his relationship with God. If Adam was to be restored to fellowship to God, God had to do all the work, and He did by providing the death of an animal substitute for man's failure. Adam and Eve placed their faith in the Lord Jesus Christ who was pictured by the death of an animal, which provided clothing for the man and the woman. (Genesis 3:21)

It should be noted that both Adam and Eve attempted to appease God for their nakedness by using fig leaves to cover themselves. God substituted animal sins instead of their human good solution. (Gen 3:7)

PRINCIPLE: the spiritual death of Adam and Eve was demonstrated by the fact that when the Lord came into the garden, Adam and Eve hid themselves from God. Their fellowship with the Lord was destroyed. (Genesis 3:8-9)

- C. When Adam and Eve sinned and entered into spiritual death they became dichotomous, having only a body and soul. Real spiritual death means a loss of the human spirit by which man has fellowship with God. I Corinthians 2:14, **The man without the Spirit does not accept the things that come from the Spirit of God, for they are foolishness to him, and he cannot understand them, because they are spiritually discerned.** (NIV) A man without a human spirit is dichotomous, he only has a body and soul.
- D. Adam's original sin not only produced spiritual death, but also introduced the sinful nature into the human race. From the sinful nature comes our total depravity and total helplessness in our spiritual condition. The sinful nature is described throughout the Bible as **"our old self"** in Romans 6:6, Ephesians 4:22 and Colossians 3:9. (NIV) **"The sinful nature"** in Galatians 5:16 and Ephesians 2:3 . (NIV) In Romans 7:14, I Corinthians 15:56, I John 1:8, the word **"sin"** in the singular refers to either Adam's sin or "the sinful nature." Therefore, the word "sin" can refer to at least four possibilities:
- (1) Sin in the singular refers to "Adam's sin."
 - (2) Sin in the singular refers to "the sinful nature."
 - (3) Sin in the singular refers to the principle of sin.
 - (4) Sin in the plural refers to personal sins.

Man's sinful nature, total depravity and total helplessness is described in Romans 3:10-18, As it is written: **“There is no one righteous, not even one; (11) there is no one who understands, no one who seeks God. (12) All have turned away, they have together become worthless; there is no one who does good, not even one.” (13) “Their throats are open graves; their tongues practice deceit.” “The poison of vipers is on their lips.” (14) “Their mouths are full of cursing and bitterness.” (15) “Their feet are swift to shed blood; (16) ruin and misery mark their ways, (17) and the way of peace they do not know.” (18) “There is no fear of God before their eyes.” (NIV)**

- E. Not only did Adam and Eve die spiritually but their sin brought about spiritual death to the entire human race. Romans 5:12-21, **Therefore, just as sin (the sinful nature) entered the world through one man and death (θάνατος referring to spiritual death) through sin, and in this way death (θάνατος referring to spiritual death) came to all men, because all sinned— (13) for before the law was given, sin (the sinful nature) was in the world. But sin (the principle of sin) is not taken into account when there is no law. (14) Nevertheless, death (θάνατος referring to spiritual death) reigned from the time of Adam to the time of Moses, even over those who did not sin (by personal rebellion) by breaking a command, as did Adam, who was a pattern of the one to come.** (Adam was a pattern of Jesus Christ in that as he was created perfect, while Jesus Christ was born perfect because of the virgin birth. (Emphasis and explanation provided by the author)

(15) But the gift is not like the trespass. For if the many died (spiritual death) by the trespass of the one man, how much more did God's grace and the gift that came by the grace of the one man, Jesus Christ, overflow to the many! (16) Again, the gift of God is not like the result of the one man's sin: The judgment followed one sin and brought condemnation, but the gift followed many trespasses and brought justification (meaning “righteousness.”) (17) For if, by the trespass of one man, death (θάνατος referring to spiritual death) reigned through that one man, how much more will

those who receive God's abundant provision of grace and of the gift of righteousness reign in life through the one man, Jesus Christ. (Explanation added by the author)

(18) Consequently, just as the result of one trespass was condemnation for all men (κατάκριμα – KATAKRIMA. Means “judgment or condemnation.” Literally, “*as the result of one trespass was judgment for all men.*”), **so also the result of one act of righteousness was justification** (or righteousness) **that brings life to all men.** **(19) For just as through the disobedience of the one man (Adam) the many were made sinners, so also through the obedience of the one man (Jesus Christ) the many will be made righteous.** (Explanation added by the author)

(20) The law was added so that the trespass might increase. But where sin increased, grace increased all the more, **(21) so that, just as sin** (the sinful nature) **reigned in death** (spiritual death), **so also grace might reign through righteousness to bring eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.** (NIV: Explanation provided by the author)

Jude 19, **These are the men who divide you, who follow mere natural instincts and do not have the Spirit.** (NIV). The word “**Spirit**” should not be written with an upper case “S” because it refers to the human spirit, not the Holy Spirit. (Explanation provided by the author)

I Thessalonians 5:23 describes the person who is a Christian as being trichotomous, possessing a body, soul and human spirit. **May God himself, the God of peace, sanctify you through and through. May your whole SPIRIT, SOUL and BODY be kept blameless at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.** (NIV: Emphasis added by the author)

- F. Real spiritual death is the status of total helplessness for any person to enter into any relationship with God. There is nothing that man can do in order to obtain any relationship with God. He can't do it by being good. There is no human merit that can ever give any man a relationship with God. No religious system can do anything to give man a relationship with God. No system of spiritualism, whether it be the worship of nature, or animals, or

anything in God's creation. All of these things are called "dead works" in Hebrews 6:1 in the King James Version of the Bible.

- G. Because of Adam's original sin and spiritual death God could only provide salvation for the human race by means of the incarnation and the hypostatic union through the virgin birth of Jesus Christ. In this way He bypassed the natural procreation of mankind so the Savior could be born without the sinful nature and without spiritual death. Therefore, Jesus Christ was born physically alive and spiritually alive possessing a body, soul and human spirit at the moment of His human birth.
11. Real spiritual death is perpetuated in the human race at the point of physical birth. In every human birth Adam's original sin is imputed or credited to the account of every human being. This imputation is directed toward the genetically formed sin nature of every baby. Genesis 5:3, **When Adam had lived 130 years, he had a son IN HIS OWN LIKENESS, IN HIS OWN IMAGE; and he named him Seth.** (NIV: Emphasis added by the author) Of course Adam's likeness and image referred to his inner being, his sin nature. The writer of Genesis was not referring to any overt likeness.
 12. In rightly dividing the Word of truth (II Tim 2:15) we must distinguish between the spiritual death of Adam in the Garden of Eden and the substitutionary spiritual death of the Lord Jesus Christ on the cross, who is called the last Adam.
 13. Adam's original sin brought real spiritual death to the human race. No choice is involved for us. Our Lord's substitutionary spiritual death on the cross made eternal life available to all members of the human race. A choice is necessary to benefit from His sacrifice.
 14. The real spiritual death of Adam made the human race dichotomous, having only a body and soul. The substitutionary spiritual death of Jesus Christ on the cross provides the possibility for every human being to become trichotomous, having a body, a soul and human spirit. An individual acquires a human spirit only at the point of faith in Jesus Christ.
 15. Adam's spiritual death was real and perpetuated to the entire human race through physical birth. Our Lord's substitutionary spiritual death provides eternal life and eternal salvation at the point of regeneration, when one places his faith in Jesus Christ.

16. The substitutionary spiritual death of our Lord Jesus Christ was unique because all the time that He was bearing our sins He remained perfect, impeccable and trichotomous. In fact, Jesus Christ was perfect before the cross, during the cross and after the cross. This is the only spiritual death in all of human history in which a person remained perfect and impeccable and trichotomous, with a body, soul and spirit.
17. The omnipotence of God the Father imputed all the sins of all humanity to Jesus Christ on the cross. Then the justice of God the Father judged every one of those sins. This is classified as “substitutionary spiritual death and efficacious unlimited atonement.” Salvation was complete on the cross, as attested to the exclamation of Jesus Christ while He was still physically alive, the Greek word, Τετέλεσται – TETELESTAI in the perfect tense means **“it has been finished in the past with the result that it stands finished forever.** (John 19:30)
18. Therefore, eternal salvation can only be appropriated through faith in Jesus Christ. Only faith can provide the solution for helplessness because faith is a non meritorious system of perception. Faith is completely dependent on the object of that faith which is Jesus Christ. Therefore, your attitude toward Jesus Christ determines your eternal future.
19. The spiritual death of Adam is the subject of Genesis 2:17, and 3:11f. I Timothy 2:13-15 gives the distinction between Adam’s original sin and the woman’s original sin. This passage explains why the sinful nature is passed down through the man.

Hebrews 2:14;

Forasmuch then - ἐπεὶ οὖν – EPEI OUN.

OUN is an inferential particle which demands a conclusion.

EPEI is a conjunction meaning “since, because, when.” EPEI is really an adverb, but sometimes like many Greek adverbs, it is used as a conjunction.

As - Not in the Greek text.

Literally, “Since therefore.”

“Since” (ἐπεὶ – EPEI) an adverb used in a conjunctive sense indicating that we are approaching a very important principle, one that gives great emphasis.

The word “**therefore**” (οὖν – OUN) is an inferential particle. This particle is generally not found at the beginning of a sentence, but is used somewhere in the sentence to indicate a conclusion is being reached in the development of the sentence.

Literally, “Since therefore.”

The children - τὰ παῖδια – TA PAIDIA. First of all we have the nominative plural of παιδίον – PAIDION. This word for children is quoted from the previous verse with reference to believers in Jesus Christ. This noun is used as a term of endearment and can be translated “dear children.”

There is a sense in which all children are dear, and there are several ways in which all children are not. But the Greeks recognized the difference and actually used words to distinguish between children at their best and children at their worst. PAIDION refers to children at their best.

Literally, “Since therefore, the children (the dear children).” This refers to born again believers in the Church Age.

Are partakers - κεκοινωνήκεν – KEKOINONEKEN. Perfect active indicative third person singular of the verb κοινωνέω – KOINONEO. Means “to share in common.”

PERFECT TENSE: means to have a permanent partnership, a permanent sharing.

ACTIVE VOICE: the subject produces the action of the verb. All “the dear children” produce the action of this permanent sharing through their personal faith in the Lord Jesus Christ.

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative): refers to the absolute reality of the fact that all believers are human. Angels are called elect or fallen.

This verb KOINONEO is set in contrast with another verb that is used a little later in this verse for Jesus Christ in His humility. The words “took part” is a translation of the verb μετέχω – METECHO which means “to share.” METECHO is used for Jesus Christ, KOINONEO is used for the rest of the human race. This is because of the impeccability of the humanity of Jesus Christ. Jesus Christ is absolutely perfect, He has no sinful nature, He has no imputed sin of Adam, He has no personal sins. Jesus Christ is METECHO, the rest of the human race is KOINONEO.

Literally, “Since, therefore, the children (the dear children) share in common.”

Of flesh and blood - αἵματος καὶ σαρκός – HAIMATOS KAI SARKOS. First of all we have the genitive singular of the noun αἷμα – HAIMA. Means “blood.” It is also used metaphorically to refer to the substitutionary spiritual death of Jesus Christ. Here in our passage is one of the few times in the New Testament where it refers to literal human blood. This word is a very common word but it is the least understood word in the Bible. For example the two literal uses of the word refers to literal animal and human blood. It is also used to represent “life.” Then it is used for Jesus Christ in bearing our sins. Jesus did not bleed to death on the cross. Neither did anyone scoop up the blood of Christ and put it in a bowl and carry it to heaven as Romanism and many Protestants believe. Jesus only bled a little bit from his hands and feet, and His blood coagulated immediately. When the Roman soldier thrust his spear into our Lord’s side in John 19:34, it is recorded that, **.....one of the soldiers pierced Jesus’ side with a spear, bringing a sudden flow of blood and water.** (NIV) The word for water ὕδωρ – HUDOR is used in the medical sense for the grayish-yellow fluid that separates from the clot in the coagulation of blood. William Stroud M.D. says in his book “The Physical Cause of the Death of Jesus Christ” states “This blood, separated into thicker and more liquid parts, flowed forth when the pericardium was pierced by the spear.” Therefore, instead of “blood and water,” a more accurate translation would be “bloodclots and serum.” This tells us that Jesus did not bleed to death; in fact, He had most of His blood inside of His body when He died.

PRINCIPLE: the literal blood of Christ has absolutely no significance whatsoever with reference to our eternal salvation. It is Christ bearing our sins that has significance. When you read in your Bible about “the precious blood of Jesus Christ,” that is relating the work of Christ to the Old Testament sacrifices. Animal life is in the blood, human life is in the soul. Animals do not have souls. Therefore, their life is in their blood. Whenever you read the phrase “the life of the flesh is in the blood,” it refers to animals only, not to human beings.

When an animal was placed on the altar and his throat was cut, the blood would gush out. Every time the heart would beat it pushed the blood out of the carotid artery and as it pushed the blood out the animal would eventually die. And when the blood left his body he was dead. That is a picture, and shadow, and analogy or an illustration of Christ bearing our sins. Christ did not bleed to death. There is no pot in heaven containing the blood of Christ. That is false doctrine. The false doctrine of the literal blood of Christ was

taught by Romanism over 1,000 years ago. The Protestants didn't fully accept it until the 20th century. Believing that the literal blood of Jesus Christ can save you is blasphemous and very misleading. It causes people to misunderstand God's plan of salvation in Christ.

Literally, "flesh and blood."

In the previous paragraph I made a point to emphasize that human life is in the soul, but our blood is still very important to us as human beings. And this is what the writer of Hebrews is trying to tell us. That is why the word "blood" comes before the word "flesh."

You can lose a lot of flesh and not die, but you can't lose a lot of blood and stay alive. If you lose a lot of blood your soul will depart from your body and you will die. The Holy Spirit directed the writer of Hebrews so that he was scientifically accurate.

Blood - is the genitive singular of αἷμα – HAIMA, meaning "blood."

Flesh - is the genitive singular of σάρξ – SARX meaning "flesh, physical and mortal."

As important as our blood is in maintaining our physical life here on earth, neither our blood nor the blood of Christ has any importance in our life after death. In fact, the resurrection body does not have blood and does not need blood. It is composed of "flesh and bone." Luke 24:36-39, **While they were still talking about this, Jesus himself stood among them and said to them "Peace be with you." (37) They were startled and frightened, thinking that they saw a ghost. (38) He said to them, "Why are you troubled, and why do doubts rise in your minds? (39) Look at my hands and my feet, It is I myself! Touch me and see; a ghost does not have FLESH AND BONES, as you see I have."** (NIV: Emphasis added by the author) The implication here is that the resurrection body does not have flesh and blood, it has "**flesh and bone.**" Neither do angels have blood, demons don't have blood and our Lord's resurrection body was bloodless. Blood is only important in the physical realm in which we live today. It has no spiritual significance whatsoever.

Literally, "Since, therefore, the dear children share blood and flesh in common."

We should be reminded that the word "**since**" which is the conjunctive adverb ἐπεὶ – EPEI used to indicate we haven't really reached the main

point yet, but we will eventually get there. The word “**therefore**” is a secondary inferential particle οὖν – OUN telling us that the conclusion will come in the next phrase. So far all we have is “Since therefore, the dear children share blood and flesh in common.” The word “therefore” anticipates a conclusion which hasn’t been revealed by the writer. The adverb used as a conjunction indicates that we are building up to it and now we have arrived, and we have arrived in a dramatic manner.

He also himself - καὶ αὐτὸς – KAI AUTOS. This refers to Jesus Christ. First of all we have the ascensive use of the particle KAI. The ascensive use is translated “also.” Next we have the nominative singular of the intensive, reflexive pronoun for great emphasis. It is translated in the King James version, “He also Himself.” With the reflexive use of the intensive pronoun it could be translated “He also Himself, and only Himself.” This is clumsy English but it does bring out the emphasis found in the Greek.

Likewise took part - παραπλεσίως μετέσχεν – PARAPLESIOS METESCHEN. Instead of using KOINEONEO as he did earlier in this verse referring to “sharing something in common,” the writer uses a different verb to tell us he is getting closer to the conclusion. At this point we are getting ready to meet our High Priest who has already been presented as our “Prince Leader” (translated “captain” in the KJV in verse 10). He is the only Celebrity in Christianity. We meet Him for the first time at the cross where we obtained eternal salvation, and then later, if we continue to grow spiritually, we come to understand much more about Him. In verse 17 He will be introduced as our High Priest. Then in verse 18 we will learn something that He understands about us: that we are continually tempted and that He is able to help us who are tempted.

We are moving in the direction of a conclusion and as we continue to move in that direction, we receive information that places the Lord Jesus Christ in the spotlight. For the first time we see a reference to the subject of the book of Hebrews: the High Priesthood of Jesus Christ and the universal priesthood of every believer in Christ.

PRINCIPLE: as a believer in the Lord Jesus Christ we share in our Lord’s priesthood. We are actually priests as of the moment we place our faith in Christ. But our priesthood cannot function to its full potential until we reach spiritual maturity. Spiritual maturity is the normal function of the priesthood of the believer in Jesus Christ.

As a baby believer you were a priest. As a baby believer you functioned as a baby priest. It is only the learning of the Word of God over a period of years and growing up spiritually that your priesthood begins to function normally in your spiritual life.

PRINCIPLE: every born again believer is a priest, but it is one thing to be a priest and another thing to function as a priest. It is only your function as a priest that allows you to serve the Lord Jesus Christ. It is only in the correct function of your priesthood that you can be an effective participant in the spiritual war, the Angelic Conflict. And you can only be an effective participant and correctly serve the Lord when you are a spiritually mature believer.

PRINCIPLE: there is only one way to become a spiritually mature believer: by growing **“in the grace and knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ.....”** (II Peter 3:19; NIV)

Therefore the writer of the book of Hebrews introduces Jesus Christ as the Celebrity of the Church Age in a unique way.

1. He begins with the fact that Jesus Christ Himself became a member of the human race. But as a member of the human race He did not possess a sinful nature, and He did not receive the imputation of Adam’s original sin.
2. As member of the human race Jesus Christ was never a citizen of the worldly kingdom of Satan. In John 18:36 Jesus said,”**My kingdom is not of this world”**..... (NIV)

Every other human being is born into the worldly kingdom of Satan because every other human being is born with a sinful nature and has been imputed with the judgment of Adam’s sin. But the moment an individual places his faith in Jesus Christ, or accepts Him as his personal Savior he becomes a citizen of heaven. Philippians 3:20 tells us that**our citizenship is in heaven...** (NIV)

Jesus Christ is true humanity, yet He is different in the sense that He is the only person born who is not a citizen of Satan’s earthly kingdom. He was born a citizen of heaven.

To explain this the writer of Hebrews uses two different Greek words. **κοινωνέω** – KOINONEO, used in the previous phrase and translated “to share in common” referring to other members of the human race who were born in Satan’s kingdom and were spiritually dead, and the word **μετέχω** – METECHO, translated “took part” in the next phrase of our verse. METECHO also means “to share or take part in, but it also has the meaning of being unique.” Therefore, Jesus Christ was true humanity like everyone else, but He was unique in that He did not possess a sinful nature, and did not receive the imputation of Adam’s sin and therefore was not a citizen of Satan’s world system.

Literally, “Since therefore, the dear children share blood and flesh in common, He also Himself.”

Likewise - παραπλεσίως - PARAPLESIOS. The prefixed preposition PARA means “alongside.” PLESIOS means “nearby.” The Lord Jesus Christ, in His incarnation, took His place “alongside” and “nearby” the human race. This could also be translated “in the same manner” or “in like manner.”

Took part - μετέσχεν - METESCHEN. Aorist active indicative third person singular of the verb μετέχω - METECHO.

META - preposition meaning “with” or “an association with.”

ECHO - means “to have, to hold, to possess.”

Therefore METECHO means “to have an association with, to share in a sense of taking hold of.” It also conveys the meaning of “being unique.”

The previous verb KOINONEO applies to all human beings who have been born into the human race under natural procreation. KOINONEO applied to Adam and the woman at their fall. Both Adam and Eve acquired something in common, a sinful nature.

This characteristic still applies today. Every human being in the world today has one thing in common, they all have sinful natures, and that means every human being is born spiritually dead and is born a citizen of Satan’s world system.

Here in our passage we are introduced to this marvelous, perfect and impeccable unique person, The Prince Leader, Jesus Christ. He came into the world through a virgin birth not possessing a sinful nature. Therefore KOINONEO could not be used for Jesus Christ. Therefore the writer uses the word METECHO which has the same basic meaning of KOINONEO, except it refers to a special uniqueness. “The same, but unique.” The uniqueness of Jesus Christ is that He is human and does have the same physical characteristics but there is one area where He does not share with the rest of humanity: He does not have a sinful nature. That is why the virgin conception and the virgin birth are so important.

AORIST TENSE (constative) views the action of the verb in its entirety in one point of time. This takes the entire period of time of the birth of Jesus Christ, including all the labor pains of Mary and places them in one point of time in describing this.

ACTIVE VOICE: The subject produces the action of the verb. The subject, Jesus Christ, produced the action of being born. Even today, when a baby is ready to come out of the womb there is no delaying it. Jesus was born at

the perfect time in God's plan, Gal 4:4, **But when the time had fully come, God sent his Son, born of a woman, born under law** (NIV) Jesus was born a member of the human race, but He was born outside of Satan's world's system. The devil had no hold on Him or no claim on Him. That is why Satan tried many ways to kill Him, from the time He was born until the time He went to the cross.

Literally, "Since therefore, the dear children share blood and flesh in common, He also Himself in a unique manner shared of the same blood and flesh."

Of the same - τῶν αὐτῶν - TON AUTON. First of all we have the genitive plural of the definite article ὁ - HO. The use of the definite identifies the pronoun αὐτός - AUTOS. This intensive pronoun is used to refer to the uniqueness of Jesus Christ. Therefore, He was born of the same "blood and flesh" as other members of the human race, but He is unique because He does not possess a sinful nature.

That - ἵνα - HINA. Subordinate conduction used with the subjunctive mood to introduce a purpose clause.

Through death - διὰ τοῦ θανάτου - DIA TOU THANATOU. The preposition DIA, plus the genitive singular of θάνατος - THANATOS referring to His substitutionary spiritual death on the cross. The definite article TOU is used to emphasize the identity of the noun. It emphasizes the substitutionary spiritual death of Jesus Christ.

When Jesus Christ died physically He dismissed His human spirit into the care of God the Father, but when He died a substitutionary spiritual death, that was a death that paid for all the sins of the human race. Every sin of humanity was poured out on Him and judged. The substitutionary spiritual death is described by the word "blood." In other words, the substitutionary spiritual death, not his physical death, paid the penalty for our sins. When Jesus died physically His body was placed in the tomb, His soul went to Hades, and His human spirit went into the presence of God the Father. In His substitutionary spiritual death **"He himself bore our sins in his body on the tree....."** (NIV: I Peter 1:24) In the New Testament the word "blood" never refers to the literal blood of Christ and never to His physical death.

That through death - These three words refer to Jesus Christ bearing our sins, Christ dying for our sins, or Christ dying a substitutionary spiritual death. Whenever the Bible says "Christ died for our sins," it always refers

to His substitutionary spiritual death. Christ did not die physically for our sins. Christ died physically because His work was finished. His mission was accomplished.

Literally, “That He through death (substitutionary spiritual death).”

Might destroy - καταργήση – KATARGESE. Aorist active subjunctive third person singular of καταργέω – KATARGEO. Means “to render powerless, to render useless, to abrogate, to render null and void, to neutralize, to bring to an end.”

AORIST TENSE (constative) viewing the action of the verb in its entirety in one point of time. In other words, it takes the entire three hours that Jesus was bearing the sins of the world and places them in one point of time in describing them.

ACTIVE VOICE: the subject produces the action of the verb. Jesus produced the action of “rendering powerless” the strength of spiritual death in the human race.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: the subjunctive mood usually refers to something potential or possible. The work of Jesus Christ on the cross was perfect and complete in that it made spiritual death in the human race “powerless, useless, null and void.” But it requires the free will on the part of individuals to cause it to become a reality in their lives through faith in Jesus Christ.

Jesus Christ did all the work that was necessary to free man from his spiritual death; now it only requires faith in Christ to set man free to become spiritually alive.

Literally, “That He might render powerless.” “That He might bring to an end.” “That He might render null and void.” “That He might neutralize.” Satan was not destroyed at the cross, but his power was broken. He was neutralized in the realm of spiritual death.

Literally, “That He through death (substitutionary spiritual death) might neutralize or render powerless.”

Him that had the power of death -

Him - τὸν – TON. Definite article used as a pronoun. It should be literally translated “the one.”

That had - ἔχοντα – ECHONTA. Present active participle of ἔχω – ECHO. Means “to have, to hold, to possess.”

Literally, “The one having and holding,” or “the one possessing.”

The power of death -

The power - τὸ κράτος - TO KRATOS. First of all we have the accusative singular of the definite article ὁ - HO which is used to emphasize the identity of the noun. Then we have the accusative singular of the noun κράτος - KRATOS. Means “ruling power, delegated power or authority, a limited sovereignty.” The word DUNAMIS which refers to absolute power is not used here. KRATOS is used to refer to “limited sovereignty.” Limited sovereignty means that God is still in control. It doesn’t matter how much “power” Satan possesses, God is still in control. But He does allow Satan to do many evil and violent things.

Literally, “The one having the sovereignty of,” or “the one possessing the ruling power of”

Death - θανάτου - THANATOU. Genitive singular of θάνατος - THANATOS. This again refers to “spiritual death.”

That is - τοῦτ' ἔστιν - TOUT ESTIN. First of all we have the nominative singular of the pronoun οὗτος - HOUTOS. Means, “this, this one, this person.” With this we have the present active indicative third person singular of εἶμι - EIMI. Means “to be, to exist.” It is a simple verb of being.

PRESENT TENSE linear aktionsart, meaning that “the devil keeps having this power” as long as God allows him to do so. Why does God allow the devil to have this power? Because of the Angelic Conflict and the appeal trial of Satan. But one day it will all come to an end. But in the meantime the work of Jesus Christ provides a means by which man is able to cause the devil to be “powerless” in the realm of spiritual death.

ACTIVE VOICE: the subject produces the action of the verb. The devil produces the action of possessing sovereign power of spiritual death. The power is granted to him by God during the course of the Angelic Conflict.

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative) speaks of the absolute historical reality of the devil possessing the power or authority of spiritual death.

The devil - τὸν διάβολον - TON DIABOLON. First of all we have the genitive singular of the definite article ὁ - HO. The definite article is used to emphasize the noun it precedes. It can be translated “the,” or used as a

personal pronoun “the one,” or as an interrogative pronoun “who, which or what.” Here it is used as a definite article emphasizing the accusative masculine singular of the noun **διάβολος** – DIABOLOS. Means “enemy, adversary, slanderer, traitor, treacherous informer.”

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 14: “Therefore, since the dear children share blood and flesh in common, He also Himself (in a unique way) in like manner shares the same blood and flesh, in order that He through death (substitutionary spiritual death) might render powerless the one having the ruling power of death, that is, the devil.”

Summary Principles of Verse 14

1. The Greek word for death, **θάνατος** – THANATOS is used twice in this verse and both times it refers to spiritual death. But the second time it is used it includes the ruling power of spiritual death, which refers to the dominion of those who are spiritually dead. The kingdom of Satan is a kingdom of spiritually dead individuals.
2. All members of the human race are born physically alive and, at the same time, spiritually dead.
3. Therefore, through physical death, mankind enters into the kingdom of Satan, a kingdom of spiritual death.
4. Satan has the ruling power or the ruling sovereignty of spiritual death. In other words, he possesses this power as delegated to him by God because of the Angelic Conflict and his appeal trial before God. He possesses this power from the fall of man in the Garden of Eden until the Second Advent of Jesus Christ. At that time Jesus Christ will remove Satan as the ruler of the world and take the power of spiritual death from him.

PRINCIPLE: during the time between the two Adams, Satan will rule the world and will retain the power or sovereignty of spiritual death.

5. As part of the second phase of the Angelic Conflict (the first phase began in the prehistoric period before the creation of man), Satan holds man in his power through spiritual death from birth as a jailer holds a prisoner in his cell until a legal release is obtained. The legal release is faith in Jesus Christ as personal Savior.

6. Jesus Christ as our High Priest provided that legal release by His work on the cross in bearing our sins and paying the penalty of sin which is spiritual death.
7. The substitutionary spiritual death of Christ as our substitute propitiates (satisfies) the justice of God the Father and reconciles man to God, taking him out of Satan's kingdom of spiritual death and placing him into His kingdom of life. Colossians 1:13, **For he has rescued us from the dominion of darkness and brought us into the kingdom of the Son he loves.** (NIV)
8. The reason why the Lord Jesus Christ became human was so that He might die. The reason why He needed to die was because through dying He might break the power of spiritual death and thereby break the power of the one who has the power of spiritual death, Satan. Therefore, Jesus Christ died a substitutionary spiritual death on the cross paying the penalty for all of the sins of mankind, then He died physically when His work was finished. II Corinthians 15:54b-57,(quotation from Isaiah 25:8) **"Death (THANATOS) has been swallowed up in victory."**(55) (then a quotation from Hosea 13:14) **"Where, O death (THANATOS), is your victory? Where, O death (THANATOS) is your sting?"** (56) **The sting of death (THANATOS) is sin (the sinful nature), and the power of sin is the law.** (57) **But thanks be to God! He gives us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.** (NIV)
9. Satan was not destroyed or made powerless at the cross. His power has been diminished. Spiritual death cannot hold anyone in the kingdom of Satan when he places his faith in the Lord Jesus Christ as Savior. Therefore, when an individual believes in Jesus Christ for salvation he is born again and becomes spiritually alive. God creates a human spirit for him, but that does not effect the physical body. Yet because of his faith in Christ and the resultant spiritual birth God then guarantees that his physical body will be resurrected at the rapture and resurrection. Everyone who has been made spiritually alive will receive a resurrected, glorified body like the one Jesus Christ possesses.

Philippians 3:20-21, **But our citizenship is in heaven And we eagerly await a Savior from there, the Lord Jesus Christ, (21) who, by the power that enables him to bring everything under his control, will transform our lowly bodies so that they will be like his glorious body.** (NIV)

10. Spiritual death and the grace of God.

- A. Even though all of mankind is born spiritually dead, God in His marvelous grace has provided a means by which spiritually dead man can live in the devil's world and still not be controlled by him.
- B. God has given man four laws of Divine Establishment. These laws are designed to protect the human race from Satan's world system. They are designed for unbelievers as well for believers. They were designed by God to preserve the human race through the course of the Angelic Conflict, or what some have called "the invisible war."
- (1) Volition (free will) This refers to freedom of thought and expression of that thought. Every human being is not only responsible for every action he does, but for every thought he thinks. We are free to think, say and do whatever we want, but God has also given us guidelines as to what is acceptable to Him and what is unacceptable to Him. Man must choose the direction he wants his thoughts, words and actions to take him Matt 12:33-37, **"Make a tree good, and its fruit will be good, or make a tree bad and its fruit will be bad, for a tree is recognized by its fruit.** (The farmer who tends his orchard well will make sure his trees are fertilized and pruned properly in order for them to bear good fruit. He protects them from harmful insects and other creatures that would hinder his harvest of good fruit. That is the principle that Jesus is stating here. Then He proceeds to make application of that principle to the thoughts and attitudes of the hearts of individuals) (34) **You brood of vipers (snakes), how can you who are evil (πονηρός – PONEROS.** This is the strongest Greek word for evil. It generally refers to the evil of Satan's world system) **say anything good (ἀγαθός – AGATHOS, referring to divine good, the good that is produced by the Holy Spirit)? For out of the overflowing of the heart (the center for thought and thinking in the soul) the mouth speaks. (35) The good man brings good things out of the good stored up in him, and the evil man brings evil things out of the evil stored up in him. (36) But I tell you that men will have to give account (λόγος – LOGOS.** Means "word, words, thoughts, accountability and

reckoning.”) **on the day of judgment for every careless** (ἀργός – ARGOS. Means “inactive, unemployed, idle, hollow, unprofitable.”) **word** (ῥῆμα – REMA. Means “a word spoken, a word going forth”) **they have spoken.** (37) **For by your words** (LOGOS “words spoken or thought”) **you will be acquitted** (δίκαιος – DIKAIOS. Means “justified, or made righteous”) **and by your words** (LOGOS, “words spoken or thought”) **you will be condemned** (or judged).” (NIV) Unbelievers, those who are spiritually dead, are not able to possess the thoughts, motives and actions that God requires, (Isaiah 64:6) but they do bring stability within a nation when they observe the laws of divine establishment.

- (2) Marriage, the second law of divine institutions is between a man and a woman only. Any other definition of marriage is evil and violates the standards of God. If enough people in any given nation violate God’s view of marriage then God will destroy that nation, or a large group of people in that nation. Sodom and Gomorrah are examples given to us to show what God does to a group of people who allow homosexuality to exist in their country without any ostracism or condemnation. (Genesis 19:1-29).
- (3) Family, the third law of divine institutions, is the result of the second divine institution, marriage. Homosexuals should never be allowed to adopt a child. Two homosexual men or two lesbian women do not make a family. According to the Bible a family is only composed of a father (man) and a mother (woman) raising and training children together. There is no place in the plan of God for a legal union of homosexuals and lesbians, and there is no place in the plan of God for them to raise children.
- (4) Nationalism, the fourth law of divine institutions, is the plan of God for the human race until Jesus Christ returns and sets up His Millennial kingdom. Nationalism is designed by God to protect the human race from destroying itself and it also provides the platform for evangelism. Acts 17:26-27, **From one man he made every nation of men, that they should inhabit the whole dearth; and HE DETERMINED THE TIMES SET FOR THEM AND THE EXACT PLACES WHERE THEY SHOULD LIVE.** (27) **God did this so that men**

would seek him and perhaps reach out for him and find him, though he is not far from each one of us. (NIV: Emphasis added by the author)

PRINCIPLE: there can be no true evangelism under internationalism because that is Satan's system of ruling the world. Nationalism is designed by God to give all people a chance to believe in Jesus Christ and go to heaven. Internationalism hinders evangelism and destroys the true message of evangelism.

11. The wonders of God's grace and mercy are indescribable. Even though man is spiritually dead and totally depraved, God has provided a way by which he can bypass the kingdom of Satan's world system and not be subservient to him. Every human being is born possessing an area of strength called "human good," described in Isaiah 64:6, **All of us have become like one who is unclean, and ALL OUR RIGHTEOUS ACTS ARE LIKE FILTHY RAGS.** (NIV: Emphasis added by the author) Yet, God uses the human good of spiritually dead man to control human history for the fulfillment of His predetermined plan. That is where the laws of divine establishment have their purpose. But man's sinful nature also possesses a weakness called "sins." It is a natural rebellion against God and His plan. Romans 3:23, **For all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God.** (NIV)

Therefore we conclude that God has provided everything possible for man to obtain spiritual life. The only thing that is needed is for man's free will to choose the way of life through faith in the Lord Jesus Christ. If he refuses, he will remain in his spiritual death and eventually have to stand before the Great White Throne Judgment and then be thrown into the the lake of fire, **"prepared for the devil and his angels."** (Matt 25:41)

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 14: "Therefore, since the dear children share blood and flesh in common, He also Himself (in a unique way) in like manner shares the same blood and flesh, in order that He through death (substitutionary spiritual death) might render powerless the one having the ruling power of death, that is, the devil."

Hebrews 2:15;

Vs 15: **And deliver them who through fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage. (KJV)**

And deliver - καὶ ἀπαλλάξῃ – KAI APALLAXE. First of all we have the connective particle KAI translated “and.” With this we have the aorist active subjunctive third person singular of ἀπαλλάσσω – APALLASSO. Means “to effect a release of someone, to set someone free.”

AORIST TENSE: This is a gnomic aorist. It is very difficult to distinguish between the gnomic and culminative aorist. The culminative aorist always looks at the results of what has happened. But if the results are absolute and permanent then it becomes a gnomic aorist.

ACTIVE VOICE: the subject produces the action of the verb. Jesus Christ produces the action of bringing about deliverance.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: this indicates the continuation of this purpose clause from the previous verse. In the previous verb, **“Since therefore, the dear children share blood and flesh in common, He also Himself (in a unique way) in like manner shares the same blood and flesh, in order that (introduces a purpose clause) He through death (substitutionary spiritual death) might render powerless (neutralize) the one having the ruling power of death (spiritual death), that is, the devil.”** (Expanded translation by Robert H. Kreger)

The devil rules the world by means of spiritual death. The devil cannot rule anyone who is related to God. In spiritual death, man cannot have any relationship with God. But the devil cannot rule anyone who has a relationship with God no matter how carnal, reversionistic or evil he may be. The power of the devil was in spiritual death; Jesus Christ produced deliverance through His own substitutionary spiritual death. He manufactured “deliverance” through His own substitutionary spiritual death.

The subjunctive mood of the word “deliver” is a continuation of that purpose clause that began in the middle of the previous verse.

Literally “In order that He might deliver.”

The believer is released or set free from Satan’s rulership to become a member of the kingdom of the Lord Jesus Christ and at the same time to become a servant of Jesus Christ, but a servant with the most unusual dignity. For he is a priest servant to Jesus Christ.

Literally, “In order that He might deliver.”

Them - τούτους - TOUTOUS. Accusative masculine plural of the demonstrative pronoun οὗτος - HOUTOS. In the singular it means “this, this one or he.” In the plural, as we have it here, it could translated “those ones or those persons.” This demonstrative pronoun refers to all members of the human race who have placed their faith in the Lord Jesus Christ.

PRINCIPLE: God has provided a way of deliverance. The word “deliver” means “to release, to set free, to effect a release.” On the cross Jesus Christ effected our release from Satan’s kingdom. All that is necessary on our part is to accept that release by faith in Christ.

Literally, “And effect the release from Satan’s kingdom those ones.”

Who - ὅσοι - HOSOI. Nominative masculine plural of ὅσος - HOSOS. This is a correlative relative pronoun which is used in four different ways:

1. It can be used of space, and translated “as great as.”
2. It can be used of time and translated “as long as.”
3. It can be used of quantity and translated “as many as.”
4. It can be used of measure and translated “as much as.”

In our passage it is used of “quantity” and could be translated “as many as,” but I will use the word “who.”

Literally, “And have been released from Satan’s kingdom those persons, who.”

Through fear - φόβῳ - PHOBO. This is the dative singular of the instrumental case of φόβος - PHOBOS. Means “fear.” In the instrumental case it means “by fear,” “by means of fear” or “through fear.” Those who desire to get out of the devil’s kingdom “by fear,” or “by means of fear,” find an opening.

Literally, “by means of the fear of death.”

This has nothing to do with physical death, but this is a fear of something much greater.

Of death - θανάτου - THANATOU. Ablative singular of θάνατος - THANATOS. Means “death, but primarily spiritually death,” which is Satan’s ruling power over the human race.

Literally, “Who by means of fear from death (spiritual death).”

Summary

1. All fear in the human race has its source in the fact that people are cut off from God. Why do people have fear about anything? Because they have no awareness of any absolute relationship with God.

PRINCIPLE: the kingdom of Satan is made up of frightened people

2. In Hebrews 2:15 the word “fear” is used for a lack of security. There is no way anyone can have perfect security in this life and in this world until they know that they have a perfect and permanent relationship with God and they know that they are in His hands and that He is taking care of them? That is what destroys fear in the life of the believer.
3. I John 4:18 tells us that **There is no fear in love. But perfect love drives out fear.** (NIV) This has nothing to do with human love; this refers to the perfect love of AGAPE, love for God. **Perfect love** refers to the spiritually mature believer being occupied with Jesus Christ. The perfect love of the spiritually mature believer for Jesus Christ eliminates any fear. When a believer is occupied with Jesus Christ, how can he be afraid of anything? That is why the Psalmist said Psalm 56:3-4, **“When I am afraid, I will trust in you. (4) In God, whose word I praise, in God I trust; I will not be afraid. What can mortal man do to me?”** (NIV)
4. No Bible teacher can ever truly understand this passage (Heb 2:15), if he believes that the writer is talking about physical death. Because substitutionary spiritual death is the means by which Jesus Christ purchased our so great salvation. Any Bible teacher who focuses on physical death here is missing the entire point of what the writer is attempting to explain.
5. PRINCIPLE: most people do not understand why they are afraid. Psychology will give them a lot of ideas, but psychology knows nothing of God and His Word. Psychology is mainly human viewpoint. For this reason people really don’t understand why they are afraid. But the Bible tells us why the unbeliever is afraid, and why negative believers are afraid. In fact, apart from their spiritual position (unbeliever in Adam, and the believer in Christ) there is no difference between the unbeliever and the believer without Biblical knowledge.

A negative reversionistic believer is afraid, and a spiritual baby is afraid. A spiritual baby is afraid because he has never learned any

Bible doctrine. A negative reversionistic believer is afraid because he has refused to place himself under the consistent ministry of the Word of God. These individuals are both like the unbeliever.

6. Satan cannot take the believer out of God's kingdom no matter what temptation and sin he leads him into, but he can neutralize him through fear. Fear is basically a lack of faith. Hebrews 11:6 tells us **And without faith it is impossible to please God.....** (NIV) In Romans 14:23b Paul tells us **.....everything that does not come from faith is sin.** (NIV). Therefore Satan knows that if he can induce fear in the believer, he will neutralize him in his spiritual life.
7. The negative reversionistic believer is one who has no desire to place himself under the clear teaching of the Word of God. He willfully places himself in the greatest danger from Satanic attack as well as discipline from God.

The baby believer is one who needs to find a place where the Word of God is taught and consistently sit under the ministry of the Word of God as taught by a man who possesses the spiritual gift of pastor-teacher.

The baby believer should first be taught how to maintain the filling of the Holy Spirit or the doctrine of rebound which means the regaining of the filling of the Spirit after he sins, as per I John 1:9. He should then be taught Biblical promises, then the faith-rest drill, which is the application of various doctrines and promises which creates inner peace in the soul and keeps the believer from falling because of fear.

But Biblical promises and faith-rest are for baby believers, they are not designed to take us to spiritual maturity. They are designed to gradually move us forward spiritually, as baby food does for the baby in the natural human realm.

8. In Hebrews chapter three and four faith-rest will be explained. Here the author is setting the stage for those studies. In order to avoid fear the immature believer is encouraged to rely on the faith-rest technic because that is all he has to keep him moving forward spiritually. But as he learns and grows he will outgrow the need for simple promises, and will begin to focus on entire doctrines from the Word. That is when the spiritual life provides real power to the believer.

Literally, “Who by means of fear from death (spiritual death).”

Remember that the word “death” refers to spiritual death. Many people are also afraid of physical death, but the fear of physical death has its source in spiritual death.

Literally, “And released from Satan’s kingdom those persons who by means of their fear of death.”

Were all their lifetime subject to bondage -

Were - ἦσαν – ESAN. Imperfect active indicative third person plural of εἶμι – EIMI, the verb of absolute state of being.

IMPERFECT TENSE: linear action or continuous action in past time.

ACTIVE VOICE; the subject produces the action of the verb. Referring to “them” or “those persons”

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative) referring to the absolute fact of truth regarding their bondage.

All their lifetime - διὰ παντός τοῦ ζῆν –DIA PONTOS TOU ZEN. First of all we have the preposition DIA, plus the genitive case of the adjective PAS translated “all,” plus the perfect active infinitive of ζάω – ZAO. Means “life, to live.” This phrase is an idiom meaning “through all the functions of life.”

Subject to - ἔνοχοι – ENOCHOI. Nominative plural of the adjective ENOCHOS. Means “to be liable to, to be held in.”

Bondage - δουλείας – DOULEIAS. Genitive singular of δουλεία – DOULEIA. Means “slavery.”

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 15: “And released from Satan’s kingdom those persons who by means of their fear of death (spiritual death), were held in slavery through all the functions of life.”

PRINCIPLE: the unbeliever is in slavery in every function of life no matter how great he may be, no matter how he succeeds in life, no matter how he accumulates some form of human security, like money or power, no matter how great his love of life may be, he is in slavery to every function of life. There are no exceptions. All unbelievers are in the kingdom of Satan and therefore in every function of life they are enslaved. I hope that you can

begin to see the possibilities for freedom and capacity for life in Christ and the Word of God.

SUMMARY

1. All unbelievers, while they are alive physically, in all of their functions of life are in slavery spiritually. The unbeliever can talk about God, he can talk about having a day of prayer and he can say that God is on his side. But this is useless and meaningless talk because the unbeliever does not have a relationship with God.
2. Spiritual death is a set of chains that shackle all unbelievers in slavery from birth although they continue in every function of life. All unbelievers wear an invisible set of chains called spiritual death.
3. Jesus Christ came into the world to break those chains and shackles and to give the spiritually dead individual a relationship with God. That is discussed in verse 14, the incarnation, Jesus Christ became “**blood and flesh**” so that He might go to the cross to accomplish this. That is why it says in Galatians 5:1, **It is for freedom that Christ has set us free.** (Jesus Christ set you free at the cross) **Stand firm, then, and do not let yourselves be burdened again by the yoke of slavery.** (NIV) How does the believer become shackled with chains again? The first step is by not using rebound on a consistent basis. The believer must confess or acknowledge his sins to God on a regular basis, or he will gradually become shackled with the chains of slavery: the slavery of religious legalism, of emotional revolt and then moving into apostasy which is the rejection of Truth.

This why we are told in Galatians 5:1b **to Stand firm, then, and do not let yourselves be burdened again by a yoke of slavery.** (NIV) In the passage of Galatians 5:1 Paul is referring to religion. Religion is a form of slavery. And religious activities can cause you be “entangled” in a yoke of slavery.

4. One of the results of Jesus Christ’s work on the cross was the breaking of the shackles of slavery from the fear of spiritual death.
5. In this way, the work of Jesus Christ has provided an open door of deliverance from the sovereignty of Satan while we are still living in his world.
6. The cross not only provides eternal salvation. It also provides freedom from the bondage of Satan’s kingdom. Therefore, **Then you**

will know the truth, and the truth will set you free. (NIV: John 8:32) Then in John 8:36 Jesus said, **“So if the Son sets you free, you will be free indeed.”** (NIV) The truth is the Word of God. Believing in Jesus Christ as your personal Savior sets you free from the slavery of the devil’s world. It is the knowledge of the Word of God (Bible doctrine) that can keep you free through every function in life while still living in the devil’s world.

PRINCIPLE: belief in the gospel of Jesus Christ provides eternal salvation and sets one free, but belief in Bible doctrine keeps one free one day at a time. Believers in Jesus Christ should maintain a consistent learning and application of the Word of God and the filling of the Holy Spirit because that is the one thing that God uses to keep believers from being drawn back into the Satanic systems of slavery.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 15: “And released from Satan’s kingdom those persons who by means of their fear of death (spiritual death), were held in slavery through all the functions of life.”

Hebrews 2:16;

Vs 16: For verily he took not on him the nature of angels; but he took on him the seed of Abraham. (KJV)

For - γὰρ – GAR. Particle used as a conjunction to express one of four things: cause, inference, continuation or explanation. Here in our passage it refers to “explanation.” GAR is actually the second word in the Greek sentence. The first word is the negative OU. I will explain that in the next phrase.

Verily - δήπου – DEPOU. Adverb. When used with the particle GAR it is used as an adverb of “certainty, referring to something that is obvious.”

In other words, it is obvious to all that Jesus Christ did not take upon Himself the nature of an angel.

He took not on him - ἐπιλαμβάνεται – EPILAMBANETAI. Present middle indicative third person singular of ἐπιλαμβάνομαι – EPILAMBANOMAI.

EPI - prefixed preposition meaning “upon.”

LAMBANO - means “to receive.”

EPILAMBANOMAI means “to take hold of, to grasp something, to assume a portion of, to assume the nature of.” With this verb we have the negative OU. But the negative is the first word in the Greek sentence, which means it is in the emphatic position. Literally, For He did not in any way assume the nature of angels.”

PRESENT TENSE (dramatic) referring to a very dramatic moment in the history of mankind.

MIDDLE VOICE (reflexive), meaning that the action of the verb reflects back to the subject, Jesus Christ, emphasizing the fact that He did not Himself assume the nature of angels.

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative) emphasizing the absolute fact of reality of Jesus Christ not assuming the nature of angels.

Literally, “For He did not in any way take to Himself.”

The nature of angels - There is no Greek word for “nature.” It literally says in the Greek, “For He did not in any way take to Himself angels.” I know that doesn’t make much sense in English but it does make sense in the Greek. Therefore in translation we need to add the word “nature or substance” to make a smoother English.

Literally, “For He did not in any way take to Himself the substance of angels.”

But he took on him the seed of Abraham -

But - ἄλλὰ - ALLA. Adversative conjunction which sets up a contrast. The contrast between human and angelic creation.

He took on him - ἐπιλαμβάνεται - EPILAMBANETAI. Present middle indicative third person singular of ἐπιλαμβάνομαι - EPILAMBANOMAI. This is the same word that is used in the previous phrase, but this time without the negative. Literally, “But He took to Himself.”

The seed of Abraham -

The seed - σπέρματος - SPERMATOS. Genitive singular of σπέρμα - SPERMA. Means “seed, semen, offspring, progeny.”

Of Abraham - This refers to the Jewish race.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 16: “For He did not in any way take upon Himself the nature of angels, but He took upon Himself the progeny of Abraham.”

SUMMARY

1. Since man was created to resolve the Angelic Conflict, God will stay with His plan. He does not change anything just because Adam sinned and gave the rulership of the world over to Satan. If God planned on man to resolve the Angelic Conflict, then God is going to find a man to do it, and that man is the last Adam, the Lord Jesus Christ. Therefore, Jesus Christ did not become an angel. He became a man.
2. Since the first Adam lost the victory of the Angelic Conflict because of his negative attitude toward a tree in the Garden of Eden, the last Adam will win the strategic victory of the Angelic Conflict by being positive to a tree, called the cross in I Peter 2:24. God the Father created two Adams.
 - A. The first Adam was created perfect, the last Adam was born perfect through the virgin conception and virgin birth.
 - B. The first Adam lost the victory through his fall into sin, the last Adam won the victory at the cross.

- C. The first Adam lost the victory by going to the wrong tree, the last Adam won the victory by going to the right tree, the cross.
3. Abraham is mentioned as the human being for the pattern of the humanity of Jesus Christ because Abraham was born a Gentile and became a Jew. Jesus Christ is going to save both Jews and Gentiles, but Jesus Christ is born of the Jewish line of Abraham to Judah, Judah to David, David to Christ. (The genealogy of Matthew chapter one)
4. Abraham is both the founder of the Jewish race and the pattern for Jewish regeneration. Jewish regeneration, or salvation is described in Genesis 15:6, **Abram believed in the Lord, and he credited it to him as righteousness.** (NIV) This concept is amplified in Rom 9:6-15.
5. Therefore, Jesus Christ was born to the Jewish race, the tribe of Judah and the family of David to fulfill all the unconditional covenants to born again Jews. There are four unconditional covenants:
- A. The Abrahamic Covenant: Genesis 12:1-3 establishes the Jewish race and the future nation of Israel. It also placed a curse on all nations, people and individuals who were or became anti-semitic. Also read Genesis 13:14-17; 15:1-7 & 18; 17:1-8;
- B. The Palestinian Covenant: Genesis 13:14-15 promises the Jews a specific territory in the Middle East and secures the final restoration of Israel in this land after the Second Advent of Christ. See also: Isaiah 11:11-12;
- C. The Davidic Covenant: II Samuel 7:8-16; 22:51 perpetuates the Davidic dynasty through the eternal reign of Jesus Christ after His Second Advent. See also: Luke 1:32; Acts 2:29-30;
- D. The New Covenant to Israel: confirms the future of Israel in spite of her negative volition and rejection of Jesus Christ in both the Northern and Southern Kingdoms, and relates the future of Israel to the First Advent and our Lord's strategic victory which included the cross, resurrection, ascension and session of Jesus Christ to the right hand side of the Father.

All of these are fulfilled through Jesus Christ.

Hebrews 2:17;

Vs 17: Wherefore in all things it behoved him to be made like unto his brethren, that he might be a merciful and faithful high priest in things pertaining to God, to make reconciliation for the sins of the people. (KJV)

In verse 17 the writer is introducing the primary subject of the book of Hebrews: the celebrityship of Israel and the High Priest, Jesus Christ, who is the Son of David. Celebrityship in Israel changed from the high priest and the family of Aaron to the king and the family of David when David became the ruler. Kings from the line of David were celebrities all the way down to 586 BC when the Jewish nation was destroyed by the Chaldeans. When they returned to the land 70 years later they never had a king. Zerubbabel, who was the leader of the Jews returning to the land, never became a king even though he was a direct descendant of David. In fact, Zedekiah was the last king from the line of David to sit on the Jewish throne, and that was in 586 BC.

Summary Introduction of Verse 17

1. In the creation of the Jewish race, God's plan was for the high priest to be the main celebrity in the nation. That never worked out because most high priests were negative to the plan of God.
2. The Jews were allowed to select a king to be the celebrity over them, so they chose Saul the son of Kish from the tribe of Benjamin, but Saul also became negative to the plan of God. We need to remember that the people rather than God chose Saul.
3. Because of Saul's negative volition to the plan of God, God removed him through the sin unto death and replaced him with David. David was a young man who spent most of his life taking care of his father's sheep. God took him out of the sheepfold and placed him as the king of Israel.
4. But over a period of time the line of David became negative to the plan of God, and rulers from that line ended in 586 BC when the Chaldeans destroyed Jerusalem.
5. One day in the future God will place a king from the line of David on the Jewish throne. That king will be the Lord Jesus Christ who is a descendant from the line of David.

6. The Jews were divided in that many of them considered the high priest as their celebrity, while others considered the king to be their celebrity. This is recorded in I Samuel chapter eight when many of the Jews requested a king to rule over them. Up to that time the high priest was the highest authority in Israel.
7. But, in the future, after the Second Advent, both of these ideas merge together in the Lord Jesus Christ. Jesus Christ will be the Jewish celebrity as the King of kings, and will also be the celebrity as the High Priest. Jesus Christ is the only One who is a King and a High Priest. He will be known as the “King Priest.” He will fulfill both the celebrityship of the King and the High Priest.
8. PRINCIPLE: He will fulfill the celebrityship of the King as a descendent of David and rule on David’s throne (Luke 1:32). He will fulfill the celebrityship of the priesthood by being a High Priest in the order of Melchizedek (Heb 5:6).

The writer is setting the stage to leave the Angelic Conflict as taught in the first two chapters of Hebrews and is beginning to move into the human conflict and the problems related to it. Beginning in verse seventeen we see the celebrityship of Jesus Christ which begins to develop and be explained in chapter three of the book of Hebrews.

Wherefore - ὅθεν –HOTHEN An old relative adverb. It is used both here and at the beginning of the next chapter. HOTHEN has many concepts. It usually refers to “circumstances, or to time, or to origin, or to a reason.” It can be translated “For this reason” as it should be translated in Heb 3:1. It is a reference to the reason for the incarnation and the resultant hypostatic union.

HOTHEN speaks of the necessity for the incarnation in view of the fact that our Lord became human for the purpose of saving those who accept Him as their personal Savior.

Literally, “For this reason.”

In all things - κατὰ πάντα – KATA PANTA. First of all we have the preposition KATA plus the accusative case of πᾶς – PAS. KATA plus the accusative case makes KATA a preposition of norm and standard.

Literally, For this reason, according to the standard of all things.”

Though the word **“things”** is not in the Greek text, it a translation of the neuter gender found in PAS. The phrase “according to the standard of all things” refers to the “standard” of God’s plan. God is very organized and very precise in everything He does. God has a perfect standard by which His plan must be carried out. There are no exceptions and there are no deviations.

In God’s plan of salvation, for example, there is only one way to be saved and be assured of going to heaven. John 14:6, **Jesus answered, “I am the way and the truth and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me.”** (NIV) Jesus Christ is the only way anyone can get to heaven. Titus 3:5a, **He saved us, not because of righteous things we have done, but because of his mercy.....** (NIV) Ephesians 2:8-9, **For it is by grace you have been saved, through faith—and this not from yourselves, it is the gift of God— (9) not by works, so that no one can boast.** (NIV) God is very organized and very specific when it comes to our salvation.

In God’s plan for the Christian life after salvation there is only one way to be spiritual, and that is by being filled or controlled with the Holy Spirit (Eph 5:18). Learning the Word of God on a consistent basis is needed for Christian spiritual growth. II Peter 3:18, **But grow in the grace and knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ. To him be glory both now and forever! Amen.** (NIV) The word **“grow”** - αὐξάνετε – AUXANETE. The present active imperative second person plural of αὐξάνω – AUXANO. Means “to grow, to increase, to enlarge.” This word carries the concept of “development and maturing.” This teaches us that spiritual development and spiritual maturity is connected to the knowledge of Jesus Christ.

PRESENT TENSE, linear aktionsart refers to continual action in present time. This refers to a pattern of life and a process.

ACTIVE VOICE: the subject produces the action of the verb. We as believers in Jesus Christ must produce the action of learning and of gaining knowledge of Jesus Christ in order for us to grow and develop as believers.

IMPERATIVE MOOD: is the mood of direct command. In other words, growing, developing or maturing spiritually is not an option given to us by God. It is a command. There are no exceptions. According to God’s plan there is only one way to grow spiritually and that is through the learning and application of the Word of God in the filling of the Holy Spirit.

PRINCIPLE: anytime we attempt to do anything apart from the way God has designed it only brings confusion and frustration to unbelievers who are watching, and self-righteousness to believers. I Corinthians 14:33, **For God is not a God of disorder but of peace.** (NIV) In other words, God is very organized. Everything He does He does in a way that will bring glory to Himself and to us.

Literally, “For this reason, according to the standard of all things.” This refers to the standard of all things that God has designed in His plan.

It behoved him - ὀφείλεν – OPHEILEN. Imperfect active indicative third person singular of ὀπηείλω – OPHEILO. Means “to owe, to be indebted, to be bound, to be obligated.” This word refers to an obligation imposed upon one by reason of a certain consideration. Here the consideration is that of the position of Jesus Christ who took upon Himself that of humanity. Because He took upon Himself the nature of a man He became obligated to man to provide salvation since He was the only one who could do it. Jesus Christ in His deity could not provide salvation.

Literally, For this reason He was obligated according to the standard of all things .”

To be made like - ὁμοιωθῆναι – HOMOIOTHENAI. Aorist passive infinitive of ὁμοιόω – HOMOIOO. Means “to made like, to assimilate, to become like, to resemble.”

AORIST TENSE (culminative) this views the action of the verb in its entirety in one point of time but emphasizes the end result of that action. Jesus Christ, when He took upon Himself perfect humanity, that settled it. The Angelic Conflict was not going to be resolved in the angelic realm. Why? Because that would give Satan the victory. The Angelic Conflict was going to be resolved in the human realm and this gives the victory to God through our Lord Jesus Christ.

The humanity of Jesus Christ began at His virgin birth. He had normal human growth. Luke 2:40, **And the child grew and became strong; he was filled with wisdom, and the grace of God was upon him.** (NIV) Luke 2:52, **And Jesus grew in wisdom and stature, and in favor with God and men.** (NIV) Jesus became a man through the normal course of time and this aorist tense of HOMOIOO emphasizes the completion of God’s plan at the point of the incarnation. When Jesus Christ was a baby in the cradle the plan of God was actually completed as far as the victory of the Angelic Conflict was concerned. Jesus was true humanity, and God the Father through the ministry of the Holy Spirit sustained Him all of the way to the cross where He achieved the victory over Satan and Satan’s plan.

PRINCIPLE: if the Angelic Conflict was allowed to be fought in the angelic realm Satan could win. When man was created lower than the angels to resolve the Angelic Conflict it looked even easier to Satan because with the fall of man Satan became very confident that he could win. But he forgot one thing: At the point of the fall of man the incarnation of the Lord Jesus Christ was promised (Gen 3:15). It was promised that the celebrity of the universe would come into existence as a man and would go to the cross as the seed of the woman and die for the sins of the world. This would not only save mankind, but at the same time resolve the Angelic Conflict. In this way the Lord Jesus Christ is the only celebrity. Literally, “He was to be made like.” The aorist passive infinitive of HOMOIOO.

PASSIVE VOICE: the subject receives the action of the verb. Jesus Christ received true humanity minus the sinful nature at the virgin birth.

INFINITIVE MOOD: mood of purpose. This expresses the Father’s purpose in the incarnation. His purpose was to provide eternal salvation for the human race and at the same time to resolve the Angelic Conflict by defeating Satan through His work on the cross. Col 2:15, **And having disarmed the powers and authorities, he made a public spectacle of them, triumphing over them by the cross.** (NIV)

PRINCIPLE: when Satan appealed the case of God’s judgment of all the fallen angels in the court of heaven, God took it out of the angelic realm and placed it in the human realm in order to win and resolve the Angelic Conflict. The Angelic Conflict could not be resolved by keeping it in the angelic realm.

If God had created a being superior to angels to resolve this conflict, then Satan could have cried “unfair and unjust.” His appeal and his defense was already based on the premise that God could not be fair and just at the same time cast the fallen angels into the lake of fire. If man had been created superior to angels then there would have been no contest and Satan would have made an issue of that immediately. But he could not make an issue out of the fact that a creature was created inferior to angels to resolve the Angelic Conflict.

Literally, “The Lord Jesus Christ “who was made like unto.”

His brethren - τοῖς ἀδελφοῖς – TOIS ADELPHOIS. First of all we have the dative plural of the definite article used as a pronoun and correctly translated “his.” Then we have the dative plural of the noun ἀδελφός – ADELPHOS. This word actually has a double connotation here. First of all it refers to the human race. He “was made like unto the human race rather

than an angel.” Second, the word “brethren” refers to one segment of the human race, the Jews. Jesus Christ was born from the tribe of Judah the family of David and is the fulfillment of the Davidic Covenant.

Literally, “He was made like unto His brethren,” other members of the Jewish race. The definite article preceding the word for “brethren” is used in a restrictive sense to refer to the Jewish race.

That - ἵνα – HINA. Conjunction plus the subjunctive mood of the verb introduces a purpose clause.

He might be a merciful and faithful high priest -

He might be - γένηται – GENETAI. Aorist middle subjunctive third person singular of γίνομαι – GINOMAI. Means “to become.” This refers to becoming something that He wasn’t before.

AORIST TENSE (culminative): this views the action of the verb in its entirety but emphasizes the end results. The end results of what Christ became can never be changed. Therefore the culminative aorist tense becomes a gnomic aorist tense which refers to something that has become permanent and absolute.

MIDDLE VOICE (reflexive), indicating that Jesus Christ Himself and only Himself produced the action of becoming unique. This introduces the concept of celebrityship.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: this goes back to the conjunction HINA and introduces a purpose clause.

Literally, “That He might become.”

And now we meet the only celebrity for the Church, the only celebrity in all of human history.

A merciful and faithful high priest - The celebrityship of Jesus Christ will be covered in this passage from the standpoint of His priesthood. In other passages of Scripture the celebrityship of His kingship are discussed. Passages like: Luke 1:32-33; Acts 15:16-18; II Tim 2:11-13; Rev 19:11-16. The celebrityship from the standpoint of the Church Age is found in the book of Ephesians.

Merciful - ἐλεήμων – ELEEMON. Adjective meaning “compassionate and merciful.” Mercy always refers to “grace in action.” This grace is based on a maximum love capacity of the spiritually mature life of the Lord Jesus

Christ. We must keep in mind that before the Lord Jesus Christ became a High Priest He was first of all a spiritually mature believer.

PRINCIPLE: Jesus Christ was not born a priest. He was not born from the tribe of Levi. Jesus Christ became a priest on the cross. He became a priest through His sacrifice rather than through birth. By offering Himself He became a priest under the order of Melchizedek (Hebrews 7:17).

PRINCIPLE: He is a “merciful” priest in that He was first of all a spiritually mature individual. Spiritual maturity came first.

And faithful - καὶ πιστὸς - KAI PISTOS. First of all we have the connective particle KAI plus the adjective πιστὸς - PISTOS meaning “faithful.” This refers to His consistency and His stability. Faithful means that He is trustworthy and consistent. Revelation 1:4-6, **John, To the seven churches in the province of Asia: Grace and peace to you from him who is, and who was, and who is to come, and from the seven spirits before the throne, (5) and from Jesus Christ, WHO IS THE FAITHFUL WITNESS, the firstborn from the dead (resurrection), and ruler of the kings of the earth (His celebrity kingship, He is the absolute sovereign). To him who loves us and has freed us from our sins by his blood (His substitutionary spiritual death on the cross as our High Priest), (6) and has made us to be a kingdom and priests to serve his God and Father— to him be glory and power for ever and ever! Amen.** (NIV: emphasis and explanation provided by the author)

High priest - ἀρχιερεὺς - ARCHIEREUS. Means “high priest, chief priest.” This is the main subject of the book of Hebrews. It is the basis from which the celebrityship of the Lord Jesus Christ will be studied.

PRINCIPLE: since a priest must be a man Jesus Christ had to become a man to be High Priest. The only celebrity of the Christian life had to grow to spiritual maturity as a man, then He offered Himself on the cross and became our High Priest. Hebrews 9:26b,**But now he has appeared once for all at the end of the ages to do away with sin BY THE SACRIFICE OF HIMSELF.** (NIV: emphasis add by the author)

In things pertaining to God - τὰ πρὸς τὸν θεόν - TA PROS TON THEON. The preposition PROS means “to, toward, face to face with.” All these words in this phrase are in the accusative case. The syntactical construction of this phrase leads us to translate this, “The things with regard to God.”

This is the only introduction to celebrityship. The first six verses of chapter three will cover it in more detail.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 16: “For He did not in any way take upon Himself the nature of angels, but He took upon Himself the progeny of Abraham.”

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 17; “For this reason He was obligated according to the standard of all things to be made like to His brethren (the Jews), in order that He might become a merciful and faithful High Priest in the things pertaining to God.”

PRINCIPLE: The high priest must be able to face God. That was the issue on the day of atonement when the Jewish priest would take literal blood and would enter the Holy of holies representing the people face to face with God. Our High Priest Jesus Christ is literally in the presence of God the Father, but instead of His literal physical blood, it was His substitutionary spiritual death that paved the way for His work of redemption. Jesus Christ was able to fulfill this function by His perfect work on the cross. Again we see the principle of celebrityship.

The question is often asked, “under what circumstances did He become High Priest?” The answer: at the point of propitiation.

The next phrase is not only mistranslated, but it is a mistranslation that leads to a misunderstanding of the appointment of the High Priesthood of Jesus Christ.

REMINDER: the original high priest in Israel was appointed by God. After that it was a matter of progeny. The sons of Aaron became the high priests. The high priesthood in Israel came through physical birth. It came to the oldest son in the direct line of Aaron.

But here in our passage we see the Lord Jesus Christ not receiving His High Priesthood by birth, but by appointment from the God the Father. The question is, “when was He appointed?” The answer is here in our passage.

To make reconciliation - τὸ ἰλάσκεισθαι – HILASKESTHAI. Present middle infinitive of ἰλάσκομαι – HILASKOMAI. Means, “to be propitious, to pardon, to appease, to expiate, to satisfy.” There is a big difference between “reconciliation” and “propitiation.” The reason the writer uses the Greek for “propitiation” here is because this is the point at which the celebrityship of Jesus Christ was to be established. He was not a celebrity

on the cross, Philippians 2:8b,**he humbled himself and became obedient to death—even the death on a cross!** (NIV) But after the cross, resurrection, ascension and session He functions as High Priest. But He was appointed at the time of the cross. At that time He made propitiation, the point where He “satisfied” the Father.

PRESENT TENSE (dramatic). This was the most dramatic moment in the history of the world when Jesus Christ was appointed to be High Priest.

MIDDLE VOICE (reflexive). This indicates that this occurred when he Himself was propitiating (satisfying) God the Father.

INFINITIVE MOOD: mood of purpose. It was the purpose of God the Father to appoint Jesus Christ as High Priest at the point of propitiation.

Literally, “When He made propitiation.”

For the sins of the people - τὰς ἁμαρτίας τοῦ λαοῦ - TAS HAMARTIAS TO LAOU. The accusative plural of ἁμαρτία - HAMARTIA translated “sins.” Plus the genitive singular of λαός - LAOS. correctly translated “people.” This gives us what is called an objective genitive followed by a possessive genitive.

For the sins - τὰς ἁμαρτίας - TAS HAMARTIAS. First of all we have the accusative plural of the definite article ὁ - HO identifying that which “propitiates” expiates or pardons, “sins,” the accusative plural of ἁμαρτία - HAMARTIA.

Of the people - τοῦ λαοῦ - TOU LAOU. First of all we have the genitive singular of the definite article ὁ - HO used to identify the ones who were benefited by the “expiatory” work of Jesus Christ on the cross — “the people.” This is a possessive genitive case. The possessive genitive means that the people possess the sins.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 17: “For this reason He was obligated according the standard of all things pertaining to the plan of God to be made like to his brethren (the Jews), in order that He might become a merciful and faithful High Priest in the things regarding God to make propitiation for the sins of the people.”

Summary of Verse Seventeen

1. God’s love for mankind would compromise His own righteousness and justice unless grace could find a way to keep that from occurring. In

other words, God cannot love man as a sinner without offending His own righteousness and Justice. God cannot be a sentimentalist, God cannot be emotional. God's love must be consistent with the rest of His character and He cannot love if any other part of His character is compromised.

2. When Jesus Christ was bearing our sins on the cross, He was not only perfect. He was a spiritually mature individual. The righteousness and impeccability of His humanity satisfied (propitiated) the righteousness of the Father. By bearing our sins and being judged for them He satisfied the justice of God the Father. And while Jesus Christ was providing for our eternal salvation, God the Father appointed Him as the last, and the One and only High Priest forever. This a part of His celebrityship.
3. Jesus Christ is High Priest forever after the order of Melchisedek Hebrews 7:17. Therefore Melchisedek had to be a human being. Why Melchisedek? Because Melchisedek was a king and legitimate human being as well as a priest (Genesis 14:18). Jesus Christ as the son of David is qualified to be a king, and Jesus Christ through His own sacrifice on the cross was appointed by God the Father to be a High Priest. He combines in One person forever the kingship and the priesthood. He is legitimately the king of Israel and He is legitimately the High Priest of the Church forever.
4. While He was bearing our sins, He was providing salvation. He was redeeming mankind. At the same time He was propitiating (satisfying) the Father, and this is the point of the Father's appointment of Jesus Christ as High Priest. This is the point where Jesus Christ fulfilled all areas of the Old Testament sacrifices, holy days, rituals and all of the required offerings. He fulfilled the Law in every way. (Matt 5:17; Colossians 2:13-14;)
5. Isaiah writes about the celebrityship of Jesus Christ as king. The writer of Hebrews writes about the celebrityship of Jesus Christ as High priest.

The writer of Hebrews emphasizes the principle of High Priest. Jesus Christ is not the King of the Church, He is the head of the Church as High Priest.

Therefore, kingship is a celebrityship concept reserved for Israel.

6. The rulership of Jesus Christ is presented through His High Priesthood for the Church. Jesus Christ is the head and High Priest of the Church ruling over a kingdom of priests. The kingdom of priests is not for Israel. The kingdom of priests refers to Church Age believers only. The kingdom of priests can only be developed after the cross and operate in the Church.
7. Technically, the Age of Israel had to be temporarily stopped at the cross because Jesus Christ not only had to have a bride, but needed a kingdom of priests to fulfill prophecy I Pet 5 Rev 1:6;
8. Jesus Christ was appointed High Priest on the cross, but there was no priesthood for him to serve. The Church Age was inserted into human history for the purpose of creating a bride and a priesthood for our Lord.
9. Therefore, whether you are looking at the principle of the priesthood, or the bride and groom (which is emphasized in Ephesians), or whether you are looking at the principle of kingship, there is only one celebrity, The Lord Jesus Christ.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 17: “For this reason He was obligated according the standard of all things pertaining to the plan of God to be made like to his brethren (the Jews), in order that He might become a merciful and faithful High Priest in the things regarding God to make propitiation for the sins of the people.”

Hebrews 2:18;

Vs 18: For in that he himself hath suffered being tempted, he is able to succour them that are tempted. (KJV)

This verse gives us the grace provision of the incarnation.

For in that - ἐν ᾧ γὰρ – EN HO GAR. First of all we have the preposition EN correctly translated “in.” Plus the relative pronoun ὅς – HOS meaning “who, which or what.” Then we have the explanatory use of the particle GAR. This should be translated “For in which.”

He himself - αὐτὸς – AUTOS. The intensive reflexive pronoun refers to Jesus Christ accomplishing propitiation and becoming the unique celebrity of the church. AUTOS refers to Jesus Christ accomplishing propitiation for the sins of the people on the cross. The pronoun “he” is the translation of the third person singular of the pronoun.

Literally, “For in which He Himself.”

Hath suffered - πέπονθεν – PEPANTHEN. Perfect active indicative third person singular of the verb πάσχω – PASCHO. Means “to suffer.” This refers to the substitutionary spiritual death of Jesus Christ on the cross. It has nothing to do with His physical sufferings. It was through His substitutionary spiritual death that He propitiated (satisfied) the Father. Salvation was already accomplished before He died physically. When He cried “**It is finished**” in John 19:30, He was still alive physically, and He said that His work was “finished.” Therefore it is the substitutionary spiritual death of Christ which propitiated the Father.

PERFECT TENSE: gives the permanent results of Jesus Christ suffering on the cross. This indicates salvation for man and the resolving of the Angelic Conflict. The perfect tense can be portrayed as a point of time at which the action took place (the cross) and the results go on forever.

ACTIVE VOICE: the subject produces the action of the verb. Jesus Christ offered Himself on the cross which was His first function as our High Priest. He offered Himself as a propitiation for our sins.

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative) points to the absolute fact of the dogmatic reality of the ministry of Jesus Christ as our High Priest satisfying God the Father.

Therefore the suffering of Jesus Christ on the cross created permanent results. The permanent result was His appointment as our High Priest forever. But He didn't get to the cross without difficulties.

Being tempted - πειρασθείς - PEIRASTHEIS. Aorist passive participle nominative masculine singular of πειράζω - PEIRAZO. Means "to be tempted or tested."

Satan challenged Jesus Christ in every step He took toward the cross. He was tempted and tested time and time again. Only three of the temptations are recorded in the Word of God. These three unique temptations are found in Matthew chapter four and Luke chapter four.

PRINCIPLE: not only is Jesus Christ our celebrity from every viewpoint of uniqueness, but especially in the area of temptations. Jesus Christ faced three temptations we will never face. The three temptations recorded in Matthew chapter four and Luke chapter four are unique.

Therefore, being tempted and tested without sinning indicates that He reached the cross in a state of absolute perfection. He was impeccable. He had to be perfect before He could bear our sins and before He could propitiate the Father and be appointed our High Priest forever.

There is a grammatical point that should be brought out here: the action of the aorist participle precedes the action of the main verb. The main verb is "He Himself has suffered." So first He was tempted, that's the aorist participle, then "he suffered," that is the main verb. He was tempted and tested and found to be perfect. He never gave in to any temptation. His temptations and testings were far greater than ours. He endured much greater pressure than we will ever face.

PRINCIPLE: the verb PEIRAZO connotes the qualification of Jesus Christ to suffer for our sins on the basis of impeccability.

Literally, "For in which He Himself has suffered (on the cross) having been tempted." He was actually tempted and tested all the way to the cross.

He is able to succour them that are tempted - PRINCIPLE: He is not able to help us because he was tempted; He is able to help us because He was appointed High Priest. This is a very important principle.

Just because someone is tempted does not mean that he is able to help anyone else who is tempted. That is human viewpoint. That is what

Alcoholics Anonymous is based on. The only way you can help someone in temptation is through some strength, or some strength in the soul that you possess. Jesus Christ was appointed as our High Priest and is therefore able to help us. That is what the book of Hebrews is all about. The help we receive from our High Priest is through Biblical knowledge and the ministry of the Holy Spirit. Through our Lord's priestly ministry and the ministry of the Holy Spirit He can help us, and He does help us. The entire objective of this epistle is to move believers in Jesus Christ to spiritual maturity. The ministries of the High Priesthood of Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit make that possible.

In the next chapter of Hebrews we are going to see a generation, the Exodus generation of believers who didn't make it to spiritual maturity. Instead they went negative to God's plan. They went into spiritual reversionism. The writer of the book of Hebrews is led by the Holy Spirit to make an example of these believers who went negative to the Word of God and the plan of God. Moses and a few others moved into spiritual maturity, but the majority of the other believers did not.

Literally, "For in which He Himself has suffered (on the cross) having been tempted."

He is able - δύναται – DUNATAI. Present active indicative third person singular of the verb δύναμαι – DUNAMAI. Means "ability, strength and power." This refers to intrinsic power and ability. Jesus Christ as God possesses the ability and the power to help us. Jesus Christ as a man and as God also possesses the ability and power to help us. As God He is omnipotent (all powerful), as man He is High Priest. Therefore as an omnipotent High Priest He possesses the ability and power to help us in all things.

PRINCIPLE: He is a man and He can help us, He is also God and He can help us. He can help us as man because He is High Priest, and He can help us as God because He is omnipotent.

PRESENT TENSE: linear aktionsart referring to continuous action in present time. "He keeps on having the ability to help us."

ACTIVE VOICE: Jesus Christ produces the action of helping.

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative) refers to the absolute dogmatic reality of the fact that the uniqueness of Jesus Christ leads to His unique ministering of "succouring" or helping.

Succour - βοηθήσαι – BOETHESAI. Aorist active infinitive of βοηθέω – BOETHEO. Means “to advance to the assistance of someone, to help, to furnish aid, to run to the aid of someone crying for help.” Here the meaning refers to “running to the aid of someone crying for help.” When a person cries for help the volition is involved, he wants to be helped. As our High Priest Jesus Christ can help, but He can only help when positive volition exists. That is how BOETHEO is used here.

AORIST TENSE (gnomic): this refers to an absolute fact that if your volition is involved in a positive manner your High Priest can help you. But He only helps through your positive use of Bible doctrine in your soul.

ACTIVE VOICE: the subject produces the action of the verb. Jesus Christ produces the action of helping.

INFINITIVE MOOD (mood of purpose): It is the purpose of the High Priestly ministry of Jesus Christ to help. But He can only help those who are positive to His Word.

Literally, “He keeps on being able to help.” Or “He keeps on possessing the power to help.”

Them that are tempted - τοῖς πειραζομένοις – TOIS PEIRAZOMENOIS. Present passive participle dative masculine plural of πειράζω – PEIRAZO. Means, “to tempt or to test.” TOIS is the dative masculine plural of the definite article used as a pronoun. Plus the participle, it should be translated “the ones being tempted,” or “Those being tempted.” This refers to believers who fail by entering into personal sins. How does His High Priesthood help? Through rebound. Rebound is a priestly function. As believers in Jesus Christ we are priests. When we confess or acknowledge our sins to God, the Lord Jesus Christ, as our High Priest and the one who is God and has the ability, power and authority for forgive our sins.

Those who are not Christians cannot confess or acknowledge their sins and be forgiven. They are not priests, therefore they have no right to confess anything to God, and God has no responsibility to forgive them.

PRINCIPLE: confession is a priestly function on the part of the believer in Jesus Christ, and forgiveness is a High Priestly function only.

PRINCIPLE: what do we do when we are out of fellowship and desire to get back in? We say “help.” And how do we say “help?” By confessing or acknowledging our sins to God, we return to fellowship (rebound).

We have to remember that Jesus Christ as our High Priest was tested and remained perfect so that He could go to the cross and be appointed our High Priest forever and always be our help in our time of need (Heb 4:16). His temptation will never be the answer of our need. It is His High Priesthood that is the solution for all our needs.

EXPANDED TRANSLATED VERSE 18: “For in which He Himself has suffered (the cross) having been tempted (but remaining impeccable) He keeps on being able (He keeps possessing the power) to help (through His High Priesthood) the ones being tempted.”

Summary

1. Satan’s kingdom is a kingdom of spiritual death. We are all born into Satan’s kingdom because we are all born spiritually dead and with a sinful nature
2. Jesus Christ was born without a sinful nature through the virgin birth. The significance of the virgin birth can never be overemphasized. The virgin birth makes it possible for Jesus Christ to come into the world without being a part of Satan’s kingdom. Since all human beings are born into Satan’s kingdom, they are all a part of Satan’s slave market. And since they are all a part of Satan’s slave market, it is impossible for any human being to be free or to free anyone else. No member of Satan’s kingdom has the ability to redeem anyone else, not even himself.

But Jesus Christ was born a free man apart from Satan’s kingdom and that qualified Him to purchase the freedom of all slaves. We were all born into spiritual slavery, we were born into Satan’s kingdom. Jesus Christ, through the virgin birth, was born outside of Satan’s kingdom. He was born a free man.

3. Jesus Christ lived His entire life free from the slavery of Satan’s kingdom even while resisting all temptation.
4. Jesus Christ went to the cross where He satisfied (propitiated) the Father. It was there that He was appointed to be the High Priest forever after the order of Melchizedek (Heb 7:17).
5. Therefore, Jesus Christ as our High Priest possesses the power and authority to help the ones being tempted and failing. Jesus Christ is the only One who can help us. First He is the only one

who can help the unbeliever to obtain salvation, and secondly He is the only One who can help the believer when it comes to forgiving all confessed sins in the Christian life and restoring him to fellowship.

The End

Hebrews Chapter Two

Expanded Translation of Chapter Two Written in Paragraph Form

Because of this, we should of necessity pay much more attention to the things which we have heard, lest at any time we might drift past them. For if the Word (Bible doctrine) having been communicated through angels became permanent (and it did), and every violation of the law and every act of unwillingness to listen and learn received a just punishment (and it did). By what means shall we escape after having disregarded such a great salvation, which was at first communicated through the Lord (in contrast to angels), and was verified under the authoritative teaching of those having heard. God confirming their witness by additional testimony, both with signs (special miracles to warn the entire nation of Israel) and wonders (special miracles to focus attention on Jesus Christ, the gospel and God's plan of individual salvation), and by means of various powers (apostolic use of grace dynamics) and distributions from the Holy Spirit according to the standard of His own sovereign will.

For he has not put under the authority of angels the coming civilization, concerning which we are speaking. But someone has testified somewhere, saying "What is mankind that You Yourself remember him? Or the descendants of man that You Yourself continually come to their aid?" You made him (the Last Adam, Jesus Christ) inferior to angels for a brief time, and you crowned him with your glory and honor. All things you (God the Father) have subordinated underneath his feet (Adam originally, then all mankind). For in subordinating all things to him (mankind) He (God the Father)

omitted nothing that was not subordinated to him (mankind). But now, we see not yet all things having been subordinated to him. But the One having been made inferior to angels for a brief time, namely, Jesus, whom we see crowned as victor in glory and honor because of the suffering of death, so that by means of the grace from God He should experience death as a substitute for all.

For it was fitting (proper) for Him (God the Father), for whom all things exist and through whom all things came into existence, in bringing many sons to glory, to bring to the objective through sufferings the Prince Leader of their salvation. For both the One sanctifying (Jesus Christ) and the ones being sanctified (Church Age believers) are all from one source (God the Father), for this reason He is not ashamed to call them brethren. Saying, (Psalm 22:22) “I will proclaim your name in my family for their advantage and in the midst of the church I will sing praise to you.” “And again, (Isaiah 8:17) I (Jesus Christ) will put my trust in Him (God the Father).” And again, (Isaiah 8:18) “Behold, I (Jesus Christ) and the dear children (Church Age believers) whom God has given to me (Jesus Christ) for a possession.”

Therefore, since the dear children share blood and flesh in common, He also Himself (in a unique way) in like manner shares the same blood and flesh, in order that He through death (substitutionary spiritual death) might render powerless the one having the ruling power of death, that is, the devil. And released from Satan’s kingdom those persons who by means of their fear of death (spiritual death), were held in slavery through all the functions of life.” “For He did not in any way take upon Himself the nature of angels, but He took upon Himself the progeny of Abraham.” “For this reason He was obligated according the standard of all things pertaining to the plan of God to be made like to his brethren (the Jews), in order that He might become a merciful and faithful High Priest in the things regarding God to make propitiation for the sins of the people. For in which He Himself has suffered (the cross) having been tempted (but remaining impeccable) He keeps on being able (He keeps possessing the power) to help (through His High Priesthood) the ones being tempted.

Acknowledgments and Bibliography

David D. Allen: former pastor of the Calvary Baptist Church in Hazel Park, Michigan. His expositional teaching and published notes on the Epistle to the Hebrews was a great source of information and inspirational reading.

William F. Arndt: "A Greek-English Lexicon of the New Testament and other Early Christian Literature," translated by Walter Bauer. Copyright 1957 The University of Chicago Press Ltd., London.

Donald Grey Barnhouse: former pastor of the Tenth Presbyterian Church in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania. Dr Barnhouse was always in great demand as a Bible Conference Speaker. His book: The Invisible War: copyright 1965 by Zondervan Publishing House, Grand Rapids, Michigan.

E. M. Blaiklock: The Pictorial Bible Atlas: copyright 1969 by Zondervan Publishing House, Grand Rapids, Michigan.

F. F. Bruce: former professor of Biblical Criticism and Exegesis at the University of Manchester, England. His book: "The New International Commentary on the New Testament," The Epistle to the Hebrews: printed 1990 by William B. Eerdmans Publishing Company, All rights reserved.

E. W. Bullinger: A man of intense spirituality and ardent Biblical scholarship. His book: Number in Scripture: published in 1967 by Kregel Publications Grand Rapids, Michigan.

Lewis Sperry Chafer: Systematic Theology: copyright 1947 by Lewis Sperry Chafer, published by Dallas Seminary Press Dallas, Texas.

John J. Davis: former assistant Professor in Hebrew and Old Testament at Grace Theological Seminary at Winona Lake, Indiana. His book: Biblical Numerology: copyright 1968 by Baker Book House Company.

Howard C. Estep: Creator and founder of "The King is Coming" telecast in 1972. "The King is Coming" has been respected for its direct, easy-to-understand Bible-based teaching. Dr Estep's book "The Rose Red City" was one of my sources regarding the Jews who will survive the Tribulation period.

Arnold G. Fruchtenbaum: One of the foremost authorities on the nation of Israel. He is a Messianic Jewish Believer. Dr Fruchtenbaum has completed advanced studies in Jewish Theology at the Hebrew University of Jerusalem.

His book, Ariel's Bible Commentary, The Book of Genesis, copyrighted in 2009 was very helpful in my studies of the Hebrew language.

Wilbur Gingrich: "A Greek-English Lexicon of the New Testament and other Early Christian Literature," translated by Walter Bauer. Copyright 1957 The University of Chicago Press Ltd., London.

Gerhard Kittel: Theological Dictionary of the New Testament. Translated by Geoffry W. Bromley: copyright 1964 by William B. Eerdmans Publishing Company, Grand Rapids, Michigan.

William L. Lane: former Professor of Religious Studies at Western Kentucky University. His book: "Word Biblical Commentary," volume 47 Hebrews: copyright 1991 by Word, Incorporated

R. C. H. Lenski: a Lutheran theologian known for his meticulous use of the Greek New Testament. His "Commentary on the New Testament," volume 10 The Interpretation of the Epistle to the Hebrews: printed 1966 by Augsburg Publishing House.

John F. MacArthur, Jr.: pastor of Grace Community Church in Sun Valley, California. His book: The MacArthur New Testament Commentary, Hebrews: copyright 1983 by The Moody Bible Institute of Chicago.

George Milligan: The Vocabulary of the Greek Testament: copyright 1930, printed by William B. Eerdmans Publishing Company, Grand Rapids, Michigan.

James H. Moulton: The Vocabulary of the Greek Testament: copyright 1930, printed by William B. Eerdmans Publishing Company, Grand Rapids, Michigan.

Harold K. Moulton: The Analytical Greek Lexicon Revised: copyright 1978 by Zondervan Corporation, Grand Rapids, Michigan.

Charles F. Pfeiffer: The Bible Atlas: copyright 1961 by Baker Book House Company.

Arthur W. Pink: former pastor, and Bible conference speaker and author of numerous books. His book: "An Exposition of Hebrews: copyright 1954 by I.C. Herendeen, Swengel (Union County) Pa.

Charles Van der Pool: The Editor-in-Chief of "The Apostolic Bible." The Apostolic Bible includes the entire Septuagint, a Greek and English translation.

A. T. Robertson: former instructor and professor of New Testament Greek at the Southern Baptist Theological Seminary, Louisville, Kentucky. His commentary: "Word Pictures of the New Testament," volume V The Epistle to the Hebrews: copyright 1932 by Sunday School Board of the Southern Baptist Convention.

A Grammar of the Greek New Testament in the Light of Historical Research: copyright 1934 by Ella Broadus Robertson, printed by Broadman Press in Nashville, Tennessee.

Marvin J. Rosenthal: the former director of the Friends of Israel Gospel Ministry, and current editor of Zion's Fire. His series on the Book of Hebrews provided a wonderful Jewish aspect in my study of Hebrews.

Septuagint: A Greek and English Translation by Zondervan Publishing House.

William Stroud M.D. The Physical Cause of the Death of Jesus Christ, Copyright 1871 by D. Appleton and Company.

John F. Strombeck: Bible Conference speaker and Christian writer. His book: So Great Salvation: copyright 1940 by Strombeck Agency, Inc.

R. B. Thieme, Jr., former pastor and international Bible teacher. His three year in-depth study of the Book of Hebrews formed the basis for my entire study of Hebrews. His expertise in the original languages served as a constant reminder of the importance of understanding the Greek and the Hebrew in interpreting the sacred Scriptures.

"Reversionism" by R. B. Thieme, Jr., copyright 1977: page 95.

"Anti-Semitism" by R.B. Thieme, Jr., copyright 1991.

Richard Chenevix Trench, D.D (Archbishop Trench): a well known philologist who established himself by The Study of Words. His book: Synonyms of the New Testament: printed by Associated Publishers, Grand Rapids, Michigan.

Merrill F. Unger: Unger's Bible Dictionary: copyright 1957 by Moody Bible Institute of Chicago.

Marvin R Vincent: former professor at Union Theological Seminary, New York City. His commentary: Vincent's Word Studies of the New Testament, volume IV The Epistle to the Hebrews: Printed by MacDonald Publishing Company, McLean, Virginia.

W. E. Vine: Expository Dictionary of New Testament Words: published by Fleming H. Revell Company in 1966.

Fred H. Wight: Manners and Customs of Bible Lands published by Moody Press in 1975.

Kenneth S. Wuest: former professor of New Testament Greek at Moody Bible Institute. His commentary: "Word Studies from the Greek New Testament," volume I, The Epistle to the Hebrews: copyright 1947 by William B. Eerdmans Publishing Company.

Word Studies in the Epistle to the Hebrews **Volume Two, Chapter Two**

by Robert H. Kreger

Pastor, Metropolitan Bible Church

*Published and distributed by
the Metropolitan Bible Church
P.O. Box 721386
Berkley, Michigan 48072:*

All rights reserved.

Webpage: <http://www.metrobiblechurch.com>